LSBU London South Bank University
EST 1892

ASU جامعة العلوم التطبيقية
APPLIED SCIENCE UNIVERSITY

University Prospectus

2026 - 2027

Table of Content

Bachelor Programmes

College of Administrative Sciences	
Bachelor in Business Administration	**3**
Bachelor in Political Science	**18**
Bachelor in Accounting	**35**
Bachelor in Accounting & Finance	**49**
Bachelor in Management Information Systems	**65**
College of Arts and Science	
Bachelor in Computer Science	**79**
Bachelor in Graphic Design	**99**
Bachelor in Interior Design	**114**
College of Law	
Bachelor in Law	**129**

London South Bank University (LSBU) Programmes

College of Engineering	
BEng (Hons) Architectural Engineering	**143**
BEng (Hons) Civil Engineering	**155**
BEng (Hons) Electrical & Electronic Engineering	**167**
BEng (Hons) Mechanical Engineering	**175**
College of Administrative Sciences	
BA (Hons) Business Management	**185**
College of Law	
LLB (Hons) Law	**193**

LSBU London South Bank University
EST 1892

ASU جامعة العلوم التطبيقية APPLIED SCIENCE UNIVERSITY

Bachelor Programmes

LSBU London South Bank University
EST 1892

ASU جامعة العلوم التطبيقية
APPLIED SCIENCE UNIVERSITY

College of Administrative Sciences

Bachelor of Business Administration

ASU
جامعة العلوم التطبيقية
APPLIED SCIENCE UNIVERSITY

Programme Coordinator:
Dr. Ahlam Al-Ethawi
Office Number:
+973 16036227
Email:
ahlam.alethawi@asu.edu.bh

Head of Department
Dr. Khairi Omar
Office Number:
+973 16036188
Email:
khairi.omar@asu.edu.bh

Apply Now

Enquiry

Programme Details

Final Qualification	Language of Study	Mode of Study
Bachelor Degree	Arabic	Full Time

Programme Structure

Study Period	Total Credit Hours	Number of Courses
4 Years	135 Credit Hours	45 Courses

Brief about the Programme

Launch your professional career with confidence through the Bachelor of Business Administration programme, carefully designed to align with the needs of the labour market in the Kingdom of Bahrain and the Gulf Cooperation Council states. The programme is distinguished by its balanced blend of modern academic knowledge and practical applications that keep pace with the aspirations of entrepreneurs and decision-makers, providing you with the necessary tools to excel in the business world. The programme offers clear learning outcomes and a vision that aligns with the university›s aspirations to prepare future leaders capable of meeting challenges and creating opportunities, within an interactive learning environment led by an elite teaching faculty using innovative methodologies.

Aims of the Programme

1. Prepare future leaders capable of managing projects effectively and making strategic decisions in a changing business environment.
2. Develop entrepreneurial and creative thinking skills to enable graduates to create opportunities.
3. Prepare graduates for a successful professional career by acquiring independent learning skills and creativity in performing tasks that lead to further personal development and lifelong learning.

The first university in the Kingdom of Bahrain to achieve global accreditation from the British Quality Assurance Agency for Higher Education (QAA)

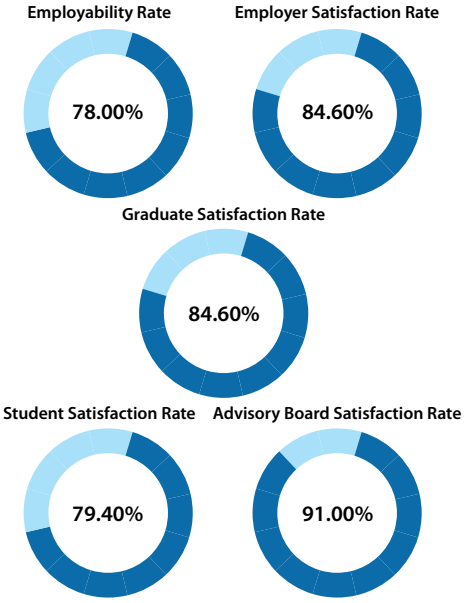
Rated 5 Stars in the QS Rating System

Ranked 30th in the QS Arab Region University Rankings 2026

Ranked 613 in the QS World University Rankings 2026

Ranked 301+ Worldwide in the Times Higher Education University Impact Rankings

General Statistics



Career Paths

1. Business Analyst
2. Marketing Manager
3. Sales Manager
4. Project Manager
5. Administrative Consultant
6. Operations Manager
7. Public Relations Manager
8. Human Resources Manager
9. Entrepreneur

Entry Requirements

1. The applicant must hold a secondary school certificate certified by the Ministry of Education in the Kingdom of Bahrain or its equivalent with a minimum grade of %60 or equivalent.
2. Students with a grade below %60 may register if they meet one of the following conditions:
   - From the talented category (such as athletes, entrepreneurs, inventors, artists, and authors with international participations, and their equivalents).
   - Those who have sufficient work experience of not less than one year after obtaining the secondary school certificate.
3. Students admitted to the programme from non-scientific secondary tracks (or their equivalent) must complete remedial courses determined by the department.
4. Transfer students are accepted according to the university›s bachelor›s degree award regulations.
5. In addition, the University Council has the right to decide on applications from students with grades below %60.
6. The number of students admitted under point (2) must not exceed %5 of the total admitted students.
7. All admitted students must take a mandatory English language placement test:
   - Students scoring between 40–0 must study the English Language Remedial course (ENG 099).
   - Students are exempted from ENG 099 if they obtain 5 or above in IELTS, or 450 or above in TOEFL.

Study Plan

No.	Course Code	Course Title	Prerequisite	ASU Credit	NQF Credit	NQF Level
Year 1 – First Semester (12 Cr)						
1	BA101	Principles of Management I	---	3	12	5
2	MATH101	Business Mathematics	---	3	12	5
3	ENG101	English Language I	---	3	12	5
4	POL101	Introduction to Political Sciences	---	3	12	5
Year 1 – Second Semester (15 Cr)						
1	CS104	Computer Skills	---	3	12	5
2	ENG102	English Language II	ENG101	3	12	5
3	ACC101	Principles of Accounting I	---	3	12	5
4	HR106	Human Rights	---	3	12	5
5	-	University Elective (1)	---	3	12	6
Year 2 – First Semester (18 Cr)						
1	BA102	Principles of Management II	BA101	3	12	6
2	BA161	Introduction to Entrepreneurship	---	3	12	6
3	ARB101	Arabic Language	---	3	12	6
4	HBH105	Bahrain Civilization & History	---	3	12	6
5	STA101	Principles of Statistics	MATH101	3	12	6
6	ECO104	Principles of Microeconomics	---	3	12	6
Year 2 – Second Semester (18 Cr)						
1	BA211	Principles of Marketing	BA101	3	12	6
2	FIN251	Financial Management	ACC101	3	12	6
3	LAW021	Principles of Commercial Law	---	3	12	6
4	MIS211	Management Information Systems	BA101 + CS104+ ENG102	3	12	6
5	ACC221	Cost Accounting	ACC101	3	12	6
6	---	University Elective (2)	---	3	12	6
Year 3 – First Semester (18 Cr)						
1	BA241	Quantitative Methods in Management E	STA101 + ENG102	3	12	6
2	ECO105	Principles of Macroeconomics	ECO104	3	12	6
3	BA251	Organizational Behavior	BA102	3	12	6
4	BA303	Methods of Scientific Research	---	3	12	7
5	BA231	Human Resources Management	BA102	3	12	7
6	BA332	Business Communication E	BA102 + ENG102	3	12	7
Year 3 – Second Semester (18 Cr)						

1	BA415	Sales Management	BA102 + BA211	3	12	7
2	BA342	Operations Management	BA102 + BA241	3	12	7
3	BA252	Organization Theory	BA251	3	12	7
4	BA362	International Business	BA211 + BA231 + FIN251	3	12	8
5	ACC324	Managerial Accounting	ACC221	3	12	8
6	---	Programme Elective (1)	---	3	12	8
Year 3 – Summer Semester (3 Cr)						
1	BA392	Field Training	BA361 + 90 Credit Hours	3	12	8
Year 4 – First Semester (15 Cr)						
1	BA353	Business Ethics	BA102	3	12	8
2	BA361	Entrepreneurship	BA211 + BA231 + FIN251	3	12	8
3	BA355	Organizational Change and Development	BA252	3	12	8
4	BA443	Business Decision Making	BA241	3	12	8
5	BA344	Supply Chain Management	BA342	3	12	8
Year 4 – Second Semester (18 Cr)						
1	BA454	Leadership and Group Dynamics	BA355	3	12	8
2	BA463	Innovation Management	BA361	3	12	8
3	BA421	Feasibility Studies	BA361	3	12	8
4	BA464	Strategic Management E	BA102 + 114 Credit	3	12	8
5	BA499	Applied Research in Business	BA392	3	12	8
6	---	Programme Elective(2)	--	3	12	8

University Elective Courses						
No.	Course Code	Course Title	Prerequisite	ASU Credit	NQF Credit	NQF Level
Group (1) (9 Cr)						
1	ISL101	Islamic Culture	-	3	12	6
2	ISL102	Islamic Ethic	-	3	12	6
3	ISL103	Islam & Contemporary Issues	-	3	12	6
Group (2) (18 Cr)						
1	LIB101	Introduction to Library Science	-	3	12	5
2	MAN101	Man and Environment	-	3	12	5
3	SOC101	Introduction to Sociology	-	3	12	5
4	SPT101	Special Topics	-	3	12	5
5	CS205	Computer Applications	CS104	3	12	5
6	LFS102	Thinking and communication skills development	-	3	12	5

Programme Elective Courses						
No.	Course Code	Course Title	Prerequisite	ASU Credit	NQF Credit	NQF Level
(24 Cr)						
1	BA204	Knowledge Management	BA102	3	12	7
2	BA246	Managerial Economic	BA101 + ECO104	3	12	7
3	BA313	Public Relations	BA102 + BA211	3	12	7
4	BA314	Commercial Promotion	BA102 + BA211	3	12	7
5	BA333	Planning and Selecting Human Resource	BA231	3	12	8
6	BA445	Total Quality Management	BA342	3	12	8
7	BA465	E-Business	BA362 + ENG102	3	12	8
8	BA491	Contemporary Topics in Management	BA252	3	12	8

University Compulsory Courses

ARB101 - Arabic Language

This course deals with issues related to Arabic grammar and literature. It studies some basic linguistic issues in the vocabulary, morphology, syntax, and semantics of Arabic. It also studies stylistic and literary features through analysing and discussing some selected texts from the holy Quran and other literary masterpieces.
(Prerequisite: None)

ENG101 - English Language (I)

ENG101 is a credit course that runs for one semester of 15 weeks for 3 or 6 hours per week during the summer semester. It is required for students of Law, Political Science, Business Administration, and Art and Design Bachelor Programmes delivered in Arabic. This course is for learners whose achievement in the Oxford Online Placement Test (OOPT) is 41 or higher. The course provides practice in reading, writing, and note-taking at the Intermediate level. It includes academic English, study skills and various reading texts and text types. The course is intended to improve students' English language skills to undertake a further English credit course, ENG102, and use English in their studies as needed. (Prerequisite: None)

ENG102 - English Language (II)

ENG102 is a credit course that runs for one semester of 15 weeks for 3 or 6 hours per week during the summer semester. It is required for students of Law, Political Science, Business Administration, and Art and Design Bachelor Programmes delivered in Arabic. This course is for learners who have completed ENG101. The course provides practice in reading, writing, and note-taking at the upper-intermediate level. It includes academic English, study skills and various reading texts and text types. The course is intended to improve students' English language skills to undertake various credit courses and use English in their studies as needed.
(Prerequisite: ENG101)

CS 104 Computer Skills

This course covers the following topics: basic information technology concepts, using the computer to manage files, word processing, spreadsheets, presentation and database.
(Prerequisite: None)

BA161 - Introduction to Entrepreneurship

This course aims to study the concept of entrepreneurship, explain its implications and significance, and provide students with the knowledge and skills necessary to transform ideas into applied entrepreneurial projects in accordance with the rules of founding entrepreneurial projects. Moreover, the course aims to provide students with the core skills of an entrepreneur, starting from establishing the project, choosing the legal formula for it, planning, organising, marketing, and financing until the whole process is fully managed while enabling students to submit proposals to establish a commercial project and discuss it at the end of the semester. Finally, the course aims to study practical cases for pioneering projects in the Kingdom of Bahrain.
(Prerequisite: None)

HBH105 - Bahrain Civilization & History

This course deals with the history of Bahrain from 1500-1800. It studies the stages of the Portuguese invasion of this part of the world and the international power struggle that erupted after the

invasion. It also deals with the ruling of Al- Utuub Tribe of Bahrain and the reign of Al Khalifa thereafter. (Prerequisite: None)

HR106 - Human Rights
This course discusses the basic principles of human rights. It acquaints students with the nature of human rights; their realms and sources, paying special attention to the international legal provisions concerning human rights included in the following documents: United Nations Charter, International Declaration of Human Rights, International Accord on Civil and Political Rights, International Accord on Social and Economic Rights, International agreement against torture and inhumane, disrespectful punishment, and Protection mechanisms and constitutional organisation of public rights and freedoms in the Kingdom of Bahrain. (Prerequisite: None)

University Elective Courses

ISL 101 Islamic Culture
The course deals with the concept of "Culture" in general and the concept of "Islamic Culture" in particular, and other related concepts. Thus, the course studies the characteristics of the Islamic culture, its sources, fields of study, and its role in creating the "Islamic character". It also deals with the so-called "cultural invasion", its types, methodologies, and other related issues.
(Prerequisite: None)

ISL103 - Islam & Contemporary Issues
This course deals with the way Islam deals with contemporary issues such as the phenomenon of fanaticism, determination of the Islamic calendar, alms tax (Zakat) on money and jewellery, democracy and government system, and other scientific and cultural developments.
(Prerequisite: None)

ISL 102 Islamic Ethics
This course is an Elective University Requirement. It stresses the importance of ethics in Islam and the value Islam gives to ethics in general and work ethics in particular. The course draws general comparisons of the treatment of ethics along different ages in the history of Islam. According to Islam, it offers insights into the possible tools to enhance work ethics. (Prerequisite: None)

SPT 101 Special Topics
This course is an Elective University Requirement. It deals with special contemporary topics that are important to University students, and the topics dealt with may be economic, social, historical, or political. (Prerequisite: None)

LFS 102 Thinking and communications skills development
This course is a University Requirement. It introduces the concept of thinking, its characteristics, its forms and its importance in the educational process. The course also deals with applying modern strategies and theories interpreted for different kinds of thinking. The course deals in detail with aspects of communication skills to improve students' skills in overcoming communicative barriers when communicating in various situations and for various purposes. (Prerequisite: None)

SOC 101 Introduction to Sociology
The course introduces Sociology; the scientific study of society. Thus, the course stresses social interaction processes and their impact on the members of any society. The course provides students with the knowledge of the main social phenomena and components of social structure.
(Prerequisite: None)

MAN 101 Man and Environment
This course deals with issues related to the relationship between human beings and the environment they live in, with special attention to the environment of students at the University. The course draws students' attention to the environmental significance and the necessity of regulating our behaviour to avoid harming it.
(Prerequisite: None)

LIB 101 Introduction to Library Science
This course introduces the library sciences. It gives a general historical review of the development of libraries through the ages and sheds light on the importance of libraries in the development of knowledge and sciences. The course reviews the services the libraries introduce to those who may want to benefit.
(Prerequisite: None)

CS 205 Computer Applications
This course includes the following topics: using a word processing programme to write reports, using a spreadsheet software programme to create an elementary accounting programme, using a database software programme to design an elementary information system.
(Prerequisite: CS104)

Programme Compulsory Courses

BA102 - Principles of Management II
The course deals with the concepts of the organisation, its characteristics and legal forms. This course provides a comprehensive understanding of the organisation functions (production, marketing, and information and management). Additionally, it covers the organisation's relationship with the surrounding environment.
(Prerequisite: BA101)

LAW021 - Principles of Commercial Law
This course deals with the study of the principles of commercial law through a preliminary section about the appearance of commercial law and the development of its sources. The first section deals with the commercial business with its different types, and the second section discusses the subject of the trader and the trading shop's discussion. Finally, the third section discusses general provisions and types of commercial contracts.
(Prerequisite: None)

MIS211 - Management Information Systems
This course presents computer-based solutions to problems encountered in the business environment. It focuses on systems, information systems concepts and technologies. Students will learn the most effective ways to use information systems to achieve competitive advantages for the

business. Topics include information systems types, computer and IT applications, key resources, integrating collaborating environments, supply chain management, databases and data warehouses. (Prerequisite: ENG102 + BA101 + CS104)

ACC221 - Cost Accounting

This course aims at equipping students with detailed knowledge and advanced skills in cost accounting. The main topics covered an introduction to cost accounting, cost terms and purposes, job order costing, process costing, activity-based costing systems, activity-based management, allocation of support department costs, and joint products and by- products.
(Pre-requisite: ACC101)

BA231 - Human Resources Management

This introductory Human Resource Management course (HRM) is designed to introduce students to detailed knowledge and understanding associated with the field. The course covers the main theories, principles and concepts associated with HMR. The course also exposes the students to the major challenges and problems encountered in the HRM environment. Moreover, it introduces them to the tools, techniques and practices used by HRM professionals to deal with problems and issues encountered in the workplace, some of which may be undefined.
(Prerequisite: BA 102)

BA241 - Quantitative Methods in Management E

This course provides an introduction to the concept, theories and principles associated with and application of quantitative methods in Management. It develops the mathematical and statistical competence necessary to facilitate progression in areas such as Operation Management necessary for decision making. The course builds on concepts and analytical techniques taught in (STA 101) Principles of Statistics, developing more advanced quantitative methods, such as Linear Programming and Sensitivity and Duality Theory, Transportation, Assignment Problems, and Networks. Quantitative methods are used throughout economy's business, government and non-profit sectors. At a minimum, effective participation in decision-making will enable the students to understand and interpret statistical reports.
(Prerequisite: STA 101 + ENG 102)

BA251 - Organizational Behavior

The course deals with a comprehensive analysis of human behaviour at individual and organisational levels. Topics include personality and attitudes, perception and attribution, motivation, communication, work stress, group and team dynamics, leadership, decision making, quality, ethics, job and organisation design, conflict management, organisational culture and politics, and organisational change.
(Prerequisite: BA 102)

FIN251 - Financial Management

This course will introduce students to the concepts and tools of financial management. The focus of the course is decision-making in a financial context. Therefore, it examines the techniques used in businesses to make decisions that are consistent with the efforts to increase the wealth of the business owners in a corporate environment. The topics covered include but are not limited to financial analysis, the time value of money, capital budgeting, risk and return, valuation of future cash flows, valuation of stocks and bonds, and long-term financing.(Prerequisite: ACC 101)

BA 252 - Organization Theory
The course provides students with advanced knowledge related to organisational theory that helps the students in understanding and analysing organisations. This course examines what an organisation is and how it functions, why organisations exist, and what objectives they pursue. It also reviews issues related to the life cycle of organisations: how they grow and survive. The environment in which the organisation operates is another important topic. Additionally, the course includes theories and practical information about different organisational structures, organisational change, organisational culture and innovation within organisations.
(Prerequisite: BA251)

ACC 324 - Managerial Accounting
This course aims at equipping students with specific decision-making and control competencies, enabling them to evaluate, select and apply various management accounting techniques - displaying integrated knowledge. The main topics covered during this course are advanced behavioural aspects of cost; cost-volume-profit analysis; advanced concepts in integrated planning and budgeting, performance management in decentralised organisations, relevant decision-making in various scenarios, and price setting for internal and external purposes. (Prerequisite: ACC221)

BA332 - Business Communication E
The course introduces the basic concepts of written and oral business communications. This course focuses on the importance of the communication process, its objectives and types. It enables the students to achieve competencies in business writing, including good and bad news business letters, memoranda, electronic mail, persuasive messages and formal reports. The course promotes student's capacity to use electronic communication and technology appropriate to contemporary business functions. Additionally, it paves the way for the students' personal development as professionals in the business world.
(Prerequisite: BA102 + ENG102)

BA342 - Operations Management
The course provides students with advanced knowledge and skills necessary to transform inputs (materials, labour, capital and management) into outputs (products or services) that explore a firm's value propositions and comply with its business strategy. Topics include location, product selection and design, capacity planning, process selection, facilities location and design, Scheduling, Aggregate Production Planning, Material Requirements Planning (MRP), and Modern Manufacturing Systems and Future Plant. The course contributes to students' development as autonomous and responsible professionals in the business environment.
(Prerequisite: BA102 + BA241)

BA 344 – Supply Chain Management
The course explores the process involved in the flow of materials and information amongst firms in the manufacturing/service provision process. The flow of materials and information begins with the sourcing of raw materials and ends with the delivery of a product to end customers. This course exposes students to the efficient integration of all parties: suppliers, factories, warehouses and stores to assure the distribution of products to customers at the right time and in the right quantity.

Topics include supplier evaluation/selection, logistics; partnering; technology; modelling; just-in-time purchasing and managing risk. (Prerequisite: BA342)

BA353 - Business Ethics

This course deals with the importance of ethics and its role in business. Ethical dilemmas and decision-making approaches confronting all Business Organisation' Stakeholders such as leaders, managers, employees, customers and the public are explored at the societal, organisational and personal levels. The major responsibility of students in this course is to make objective ethical decisions and justify them through oral and written communication.
(Prerequisite: BA 102)

BA355 – Organizational Change and Development

The course exposes students to critical knowledge and understanding of organisational change and development in a dynamic and ever-changing business environment. In this course, students will learn about change – its meanings – and explore drivers for change, causes for changes related to business success or failure, and legal and regulatory issues related to change. The course provides insights into historical and contemporary theories and methods of introducing change in organisations. Students will be exposed to how planning, managing and accessing change develop the organisation. Additionally, the course focuses on organisational development as a process to promote organisation problem-solving capacity, potential competitiveness and overall effectiveness.
(Prerequisite: BA 252)

BA361 - Entrepreneurship

The course is designed to provide students with practical insights into entrepreneurship and entrepreneurs. Students will learn the stages that an entrepreneur might pursue in taking the seed of an idea and growing it into a successful business. Additionally, students will be acquainted with the challenges of owning and running a business. The course focuses on how to start and manage a new business/venture and, more specifically, on questions such as whether this new business should be part of an existing family business, what appropriate form of ownership the business might take, the sourcing of funds, the selection of a location and other operational requirements.
(Prerequisite: BA 211 + BA 231 + FIN 251)

BA362 - International Business

The course prepares students to conduct and manage business across borders by introducing them to domestic and international business differences. Both opportunities and risks are assessed in international markets. Topics covered international business entry modes, cultural effects on organisational and individual behaviour, economic integration schemes, firm-specific and country-specific elements and their impact on creating competitive advantages. In addition, the course explores the legal, business, social and political forces in the business environment along with relevant governmental regulations, labour force consideration and issues related to competition in the international environment.
(Prerequisite: BA 211+ BA 231 +FIN 251)

BA392 - Field Training

The internship is a pre-arranged, credit-bearing work experience that allows a student to achieve personal goals aligned with the goals of a supervising professional or agency. Internships provide

opportunities to explore career options, test career choices, and encourage the development of skills within a chosen field. An internship allows students to relate theory with practical job experience and develop new skills that will be transferable to future employers.
(Prerequisite: 90 Credit Hours + BA361)

BA 415 – Sales Management
The course is practice-oriented and designed to be a hands-on introduction to selling and sales management. It focuses on the management of a sales programme, and on what it takes to be successful in managing sales function in a personal direct sales environment by engaging students in practical sales management situations similar to real-world experiences by putting them in the position of being prospective sales manager. The course provides a systematic framework for understanding sales processes, how sales are distinguished from marketing and its impact on achieving the organisation's overarching objectives. Additionally, this course focuses on sales strategies, sales budgeting, forecasting and evaluating sales performance, personal selling skills and issues related to recruiting, compensating and retaining salespeople.
(Prerequisite: BA 102 + BA 211)

BA421 - Feasibility Studies
This course exposes students to the area of Feasibility Studies by asking and answering questions such as 'How can the feasibility of a new idea be explored?' and 'How can dominant market trends be identified?' Students are introduced to the core theories and concepts of Feasibility Studies and are required to develop advanced knowledge and understanding of this practice area. The investigative methods associated with Feasibility Studies are explored, and students are exposed to teaching, which allows them to apply advanced knowledge to a range of issues and problems and identify and practice specialist skills to complete advanced-level tasks in the area. The course contributes to the development of generic problem-solving skills, and to communication, ICT and numeracy skills.
(Prerequisite: BA361)

BA443 - Business Decision Making
The course exposes the students to a wide variety of problem descriptions and methods of analysis. It equips students with quantitative tools commonly used in a business setting. For example, decision theory models and decision trees will prove useful for a business situation with numerous alternative decisions, each having a probability and monetary value associated with the outcome. Using break-even analysis, students will be able to determine the marginal level of products to know when the company will profit from its operations and help the manager control the cost. Game theory will assist students in choosing the best competitive strategy.
(Prerequisite: BA 241)

BA454 – Leadership and Group Dynamics
The course studies leadership roles in the managerial hierarchy, leadership styles and leadership techniques in business organisations. During the course, theories and concepts are used to explore team and organisational problems to understand the complexity of the business environment in which groups operate. In addition, this course focuses on building team spirit, creating group interactions and dynamics, and ethical and legal issues related to leadership and group interventions.
(Prerequisite: BA 355)

BA463 - Innovation Management
The course introduces the core concepts and theories related to innovation. Throughout the course, students will learn how innovation is crucial for individuals and organisations. Students will be provided with various tools and methods to promote innovation within themselves and others. The course will teach students how to contribute as an innovative team, manage innovation in real work situations, and spread an innovation culture within a business organisation. The course itself draws upon real-world examples and experiences of leading organisations worldwide.
(Prerequisite: BA361)

BA464 - Strategic Management E
This course is the capstone, integrative course for graduating business administration students. This exciting, challenging course focuses on how firms formulate, implement, and evaluate strategies. Strategic management concepts and techniques are studied. Students use all the knowledge acquired from prior business courses, and new strategic-management techniques learned to chart the future direction of different organisations. The major responsibility of students in this course is to make objective strategic decisions and justify them through oral and written communication.
(Prerequisite: BA102 + 114 Credit Hours)

BA499 - Applied Research in Business
This course is designed to develop and sustain students' readiness to work on real business problems related to their work or areas of interest. The course gives students the opportunity to conduct research and gather data to which theoretical knowledge can be applied to diagnose and solve the problems encountered in business organisations. The research could involve a study of new market opportunities, a comparative study of the best practices in the field, or a study of the perceptions of employees or clients of a certain business problem or service.
(Prerequisite: BA392)

Programme Elective Courses:

BA204 - Knowledge Management
This course is designed to give students an introductory exposure to how organisations create, identify, confine, and disseminate knowledge, i.e., knowledge management (KM). Topics include knowledge management principles; new organisations and intellectual capital; integration of human resources, training and development, information systems, business units implementing knowledge management strategies; and new roles and responsibilities for knowledge workers.
(Prerequisite: BA102)

BA246 - Managerial Economic
This course aims at equipping students with detailed knowledge and advanced skills in managerial economics. The main topics covered a managerial economics introduction, key measures and relations, demand and pricing, cost and production, organisation economics, market equilibrium and perfect competition, firm competition and market structure, and market regulation.
(Prerequisite: BA101 + ECO104)

BA313 - Public Relations

This course deals with the public relations profession by teaching students how to think like a public relations practitioner. The course guides students into recognising the importance of research, the need to identify a targeted audience and direct messages to specific audiences, and the importance of planning and evaluation in building a public relations campaign. This course will enable students to deal with public relations problems and provide multiangled solutions. In doing this, it underpins the value of public relations in decision-making. In addition, the course focuses on the public relations activities and functions within organisations.
(Prerequisite: BA102 + BA211)

BA314 - Commercial Promotion

In today's market, consumers are bombarded with thousands of messages that might be interesting or not on a daily basis. Nowadays, successful marketers are those who are capable of recognising their audiences. On the other hand, they know how these audiences perceive their companies. Therefore, the course enables the students to choose amongst the different promotional mix elements, to create the appropriate message and select the most effective mediums to reach the targeted audiences. As students go through this course, he/she will gain a broad appreciation of the "ubiquity" of advertising and promotion. The student will realise that they constitute a critical element of any business endeavour. The course stresses the role of the promotional mix; advertising, personal selling, sales promotion, publicity, and public relations play in business organisations. Other topics, such as Business communication Models and managing advertising campaigns, are covered throughout the course. As a result, the student will gain decision- making competencies regarding promoting commercial products and services.
(Prerequisite: BA 102 + BA 211)

BA333 - Planning and Selecting Human Resource

This course provides students with advanced knowledge and understanding of core principles, theories and concepts necessary to plan and select human resources. It also covers the issues, processes and practices involved in planning and selecting human resources. Students will gain the knowledge and tools to analyse and assess human resource requirements using qualitative and quantitative approaches and techniques. Additionally, the course will examine social, cultural and organisational factors that might affect planning and selecting human resources in that challenging Business context.
(Prerequisite: BA231)

BA445 - Total Quality Management

The course introduces the concepts, principles, techniques and practices of Total Quality Management (TQM). It provides a historical background; a review of the most important pioneers and scientists such as Deming, Juran, Crosby and Ishikawa. Additionally, it explores the philosophies and ideas of the leading thinkers in quality management and change management. Students will learn the significance of TQM in reducing costs, meeting and exceeding customers' and other stakeholders' expectations of business organisations, and TQM awards and ISO. This course focuses on service quality, client satisfaction, process control and capability, inspection, efficiency improvement, Six Sigma Quality Concepts and statistics control tools to measure the quality of manufacturing and service-related processes. (Prerequisite: BA342)

BABA465 - E-Business

Electronic business or e-business causes a paradigm shift in how today's businesses operate and compete in the global marketplace. The course focuses on how organisations of all types and sizes are rethinking their strategies and how they realised that e-business might be used effectively in implementing traditional business. This course is not a programming course. It introduces the fundamentals of e-Business systems in today's dynamic, rapidly changing business environment and how these fundamentals support improved e-business processes and decision making. The course focuses on using the evolved technology in E-Business concepts, models such as (B2B), (B2C), (G2B), (C2C), E- Commerce, E-Business market place, and information security issues, E-procurement, E-government and E-learning.
(Prerequisite: BA362 + ENG102)

BA491 - Contemporary Topics in Management

The course explores current and emerging issues/problems that affect business organisations. The course format and content will vary from semester to semester, permitting studying various topics and new business trends derived from the ever-changing business environment. Among the addressed issues, problems related to people management, human resource, culture, economy, technology, work process design and management practices will be tackled, conforming to the era of globalisation and changing firm boundaries.
(Prerequisite: BA252)

Bachelor of Political Science

ASU
جامعة العلوم التطبيقية
APPLIED SCIENCE UNIVERSITY

Programme Coordinator:
Dr. Osama Zain Al-Abdin

Office Number:
+973 16036186

Email:
Osama.elabdin@asu.edu.bh

Head of Department
Dr. Mahmoud Khalifa

Office Number:
+973 16036262

Email:
mahmoud.khalifa@asu.edu.bh

Apply Now

Enquiry

Programme Details

Final Qualification	Language of Study	Mode of Study
Bachelor Degree	Arabic	Full Time

Programme Structure

Study Period	Total Credit Hours	Number of Courses
4 Years	135 Credit Hours	45 Courses

Brief about the Programme

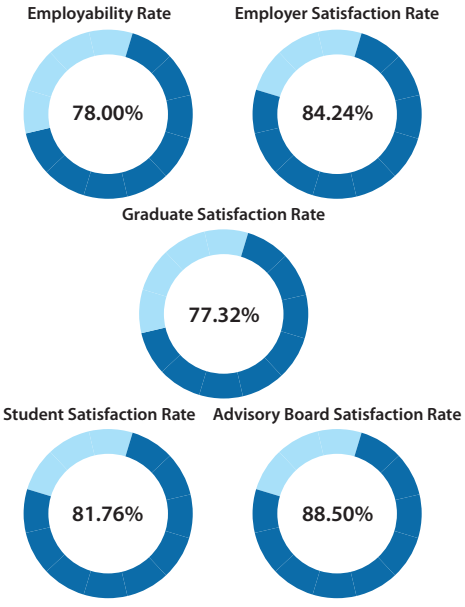
Discover the world of international relations and public policies with the Bachelor of Political Science programme — carefully designed to enable you to analyze political issues with professionalism and a realistic methodology that reflects a deep understanding of local and international events.

Open up to vast horizons of opportunities in the diplomatic service, media, research centers, and international institutions, and develop critical thinking skills and strategic understanding that will enable you to grasp political dynamics and make influential decisions that make a difference.

Aims of the Programme

1. Meet the needs of society in the Kingdom of Bahrain and regional countries by graduating qualified specialists in political science capable of problem-solving, to work in diplomacy, international and regional organizations, civil society organizations, ministries, public and private institutions, media, and public opinion-making institutions.
2. Prepare graduates familiar with basic and advanced knowledge in the various branches of political science, possessing sufficient intellectual, practical, communication, and critical thinking skills that qualify them to enter the labor market and contribute to serving society.
3. Prepare graduates capable of collective and individual scientific research in the various fields of political science.
4. Qualify graduates for postgraduate studies in political science and related fields.
5. Contribute to political socialization, deepening the values of good citizenship, and consolidating behavioral and national values based on objective dialogue, tolerance, and respect for others.

General Statistics



The first university in the Kingdom of Bahrain to achieve global accreditation from the British Quality Assurance Agency for Higher Education (QAA)

Rated 5 Stars in the QS Rating System

Ranked 30th in the QS Arab Region University Rankings 2026

Ranked 613 in the QS World University Rankings 2026

Ranked 301+ Worldwide in the Times Higher Education University Impact Rankings

Career Paths

1. Policy Researcher
2. Political Consultant
3. International Relations Analyst
4. Diplomat
5. International Organizations Specialist
6. Strategic Analyst
7. Parliamentary Affairs Specialist
8. Public Opinion Researcher
9. Advisor in Foreign & Interior Ministries
10. Advisor in Research & Study Centers

Entry Requirements

1. The applicant must hold a secondary school certificate certified by the Ministry of Education in the Kingdom of Bahrain or its equivalent with a minimum grade of %60 or equivalent.
2. Students with a grade below %60 may register if they meet one of the following conditions:
   - From the talented category (such as athletes, entrepreneurs, inventors, artists, and authors with international participations, and their equivalents).
   - Those who have sufficient work experience of not less than one year after obtaining the secondary school certificate.
3. Students admitted to the programme from non-scientific secondary tracks (or their equivalent) must complete remedial courses determined by the department.
4. Transfer students are accepted according to the university›s bachelor›s degree award regulations.
5. In addition, the University Council has the right to decide on applications from students with grades below %60.
6. The number of students admitted under point (2) must not exceed %5 of the total admitted students.
7. All admitted students must take a mandatory English language placement test:
   - Students scoring between 40–0 must study the English Language Remedial course (ENG 099).
   - Students are exempted from ENG 099 if they obtain 5 or above in IELTS, or 450 or above in TOEFL

Study Plan

No.	Course Code	Course Title	Prerequisite	ASU Credit	NQF Credit	NQF Level
Year 1 – First Semester (15 Cr)						
1	POL101	Introduction To Political Sciences	-	3	12	5
2	CS 104	Computer Skills	-	3	12	5
3	ENG 101	English Language I	-	3	12	5
4	MATH101	Business Mathematics	-	3	12	5
5	-	University Elective Course (1)	-	3	12	5
Year 1 – Second Semester (15Cr)						
1	BA101	Principles of Management I	-	3	12	5
2	ACC101	Principles of Accounting I	-	3	12	5
3	ENG102	English Language II	ENG 101	3	12	5
4	HR106	Human Rights	-	3	12	5
5	POL131	Principles of International Relations	-	3	12	6
Year 2 – First Semester (18 Cr)						
1	ARB101	Arabic Language	-	3	12	6
2	BA161	Introduction to Entrepreneurship	-	3	12	6
3	ECO104	Principles of Microeconomics	-	3	12	6
4	HBH105	Bahrain Civilization & History	-	3	12	6
5	STA101	Principles of Statistics	MATH101	3	12	6
6	POL124	Principles of Law	-	3	12	6
Year 2 – Second Semester (18 Cr)						
1	BA211	Principles of Marketing	BA101	3	12	6
2	POL 121	Comparative political systems	POL101	3	12	6
3	POL125	Constitutional Law	POL124	3	12	6
4	POL211	Ancient & Medieval Systems	POL101	3	12	6
5	-	University Elective Course (2)	-	3	12	6
6	POL 268	Readings in Politics E	- ENG102+ POL 101	3	12	7
Year 3 – First Semester (18 Cr)						
1	POL234	International Organizations	POL131	3	12	7
2	POL251	Political Sociology	POL101	3	12	7
3	POL233	Geopolitics	POL131	3	12	7
4	POL 322	Bahrain's Political System	POL121	3	12	7
5	POL312	Modern & Contemporary Political Thought	POL211	3	12	7

6	ECO105	Principles of Macroeconomics	ECO104	3	12	7
Year 3 – Second Semester (15 Cr)						
1	POL325	Arab Political Systems	POL121	3	12	7
2	POL313	Political Theory	POL312	3	12	7
3	POL342	Comparative Foreign Policy	POL233	3	12	7
4	BA303	Methods of Scientific Research	-	3	12	7
5	POL327	Public Administration	POL121	3	12	7
Year 4 – First Semester (18 Cr)						
1	POL361	Methodology of Political Science	BA303	3	12	8
2	POL 354	Public Opinion and Media	POL251	3	12	8
3	POL343	Diplomacy in Theory & Practice	POL234	3	12	8
4	POL362	Internship	90 CR.H	3	12	8
5	-	Program Elective Course (1)	-	3	12	8
6	POL433	International Economic System E	POL131+POL268	3	12	8
Year 4 – Second Semester (18 Cr)						
1	POL439	Contemporary International Issues E	POL131 + POL268	3	12	8
2	-	Program Elective Course (2)	-	3	12	8
3	POL451	Political Development	POL 251	3	12	8
4	POL465	Ethics in Politics	POL313	3	12	8
5	POL434	The Theories of International Relations	POL433	3	12	8
6	POL464	Applied Research in Political Science	POL361 + POL362	3	12	8

University Elective Courses						
No.	**Course Code**	**Course Title**	**Prerequisite**	**ASU Credit**	**NQF Credit**	**NQF Level**
Group 1 (3 Cr)						
1	ISL101	Islamic Culture	---	3	12	6
2	ISL102	Islamic Ethic	---	3	12	6
3	ISL103	Islam & Contemporary Issues	---	3	12	6
Group 2 (3 Cr)						
1	LIB101	Introduction to Library Science	---	3	12	5
2	MAN101	Man and Environment	---	3	12	5
3	SOC101	Introduction to Sociology	---	3	12	5
4	SPT101	Special Topics	---	3	12	5
5	CS205	Computer Applications	CS104	3	12	5
6	LFS102	Thinking and communication skills development	---	3	12	5

Programme Elective Courses						
No.	**Course Code**	**Course Title**	**Prerequisite**	**ASU Credit**	**NQF Credit**	**NQF Level**
Group 1 (6 Cr)						
1	POL 366	Special Topics in Political Science	POL 251	3	12	8
2	POL432	Arab's Neighboring Countries	POL 233	3	12	8
3	POL 414	Contemporary Political Ideology	POL 312	3	12	8
4	POL 353	Political Parties	POL251	3	12	8
5	POL467	Strategic Studies	POL 233	3	12	8
6	POL326	Electoral systems	POL 121	3	12	8
7	POL 436	International Crises Management	POL 234	3	12	8
8	POL 431	Negotiation Skills	POL 343	3	12	8

University Compulsory Courses

ARB101 - Arabic Language

This course deals with issues related to Arabic grammar and literature. It studies some basic linguistic issues in the vocabulary, morphology, syntax, and semantics of Arabic. It also studies stylistic and literary features through analysing and discussing some selected texts from the holy Quran and other literary masterpieces.
(Prerequisite: None)

ENG101 - English Language (I)

ENG101 is a credit course that runs for one semester of 15 weeks for 3 or 6 hours per week during the summer semester. It is required for students of Law, Political Science, Business Administration, and Art and Design Bachelor Programmes delivered in Arabic. This course is for learners whose achievement in the Oxford Online Placement Test (OOPT) is 41 or higher. The course provides practice in reading, writing, and note-taking at the Intermediate level. It includes academic English, study skills and various reading texts and text types. The course is intended to improve students' English language skills to undertake a further English credit course, ENG102, and use English in their studies as needed. (Prerequisite: None)

ENG102 - English Language (II)

ENG102 is a credit course that runs for one semester of 15 weeks for 3 or 6 hours per week during the summer semester. It is required for students of Law, Political Science, Business Administration, and Art and Design Bachelor Programmes delivered in Arabic. This course is for learners who have completed ENG101. The course provides practice in reading, writing, and note-taking at the upper-intermediate level. It includes academic English, study skills and various reading texts and text types. The course is intended to improve students' English language skills to undertake various credit courses and use English in their studies as needed.
(Prerequisite: ENG101)

CS104 - Computer Skills

This course covers the basic information technology concepts, using the computer to manage files, word processing, spreadsheets, presentation and database. (Prerequisite: None)

BA 161 - Introduction to Entrepreneurship

This course aims to study the concept of entrepreneurship, explain its implications and significance, and provide students with the knowledge and skills necessary to transform ideas into applied entrepreneurial projects in accordance with the rules of founding entrepreneurial projects. Moreover, the course aims to provide students with the core skills of an entrepreneur, starting from establishing the project, choosing the legal formula for it, planning, organising, marketing, and financing until the whole process is fully managed while enabling students to submit proposals to establish a commercial project and discuss it at the end of the semester. Finally, the course aims to study practical cases for pioneering projects in the Kingdom of Bahrain. (Prerequisite: None)

HBH105 - Bahrain Civilization & History

This course deals with the history of Bahrain from 1500-1800. It studies the stages of the Portuguese invasion of this part of the world and the international power struggle that erupted after the invasion. It also deals with the ruling of Al- Utuub Tribe of Bahrain and the reign of Al Khalifa thereafter. (Prerequisite: None)

HR106 - Human Rights
This course discusses the basic principles of human rights. It acquaints students with the nature of human rights; their realms and sources, paying special attention to the international legal provisions concerning human rights included in the following documents: United Nations Charter, International Declaration of Human Rights, International Accord on Civil and Political Rights, International Accord on Social and Economic Rights, International agreement against torture and inhumane, disrespectful punishment, and Protection mechanisms and constitutional organisation of public rights and freedoms in the Kingdom of Bahrain.
(Prerequisite: None)

University Elective Courses ISL101 - Islamic Culture
The course deals with the concept of "Culture" in general and the concept of "Islamic Culture" in particular, and other related concepts. Thus, the course studies the characteristics of the Islamic culture, its sources, fields of study, and its role in creating "Islamic character". It also deals with the so-called "cultural invasion", its types, methodologies, and other related issues.
(Prerequisite: None)

ISL103 - Islam & Contemporary Issues
This course deals with the way Islam deals with contemporary issues such as the phenomenon of fanaticism, determination of the Islamic calendar, alms tax (Zakat) on money and jewellery, democracy and government system, and other scientific and cultural developments.
(Prerequisite: None)

ISL102 - Islamic Ethics
This course is an Elective University Requirement. It stresses the importance of ethics in Islam and the value Islam gives to ethics in general and work ethics in particular. The course draws general comparisons of the treatment of ethics along different ages in the history of Islam. According to Islam, it offers insights into the possible tools to enhance work ethics. (Prerequisite: None)

SPT101 - Special Topics
This course is an Elective University Requirement. It deals with special contemporary topics that are important to University students, and the topics dealt with may be economic, social, historical, or political.
(Prerequisite: None)

LFS102 - Thinking and Communications Skills Development
This course is a University Requirement. It introduces the concept of thinking, its characteristics, its forms and its importance in the educational process. The course also deals with applying modern strategies and theories interpreted for different kinds of thinking. The course deals in detail with aspects of communication skills to improve the students' skills in overcoming communicative barriers when communicating in various situations and for various purposes. (Prerequisite: None)

SOC101 - Introduction to Sociology
The course introduces Sociology; the scientific study of society. Thus, the course stresses social interaction processes and their impact on the members of any society. The course provides students with knowledge of the main social phenomena and the components of social structure.
(Prerequisite: None)

MAN101 - Man and Environment
This course deals with issues related to the relationship between human beings and the environment they live in, with special attention to the environment of students at the University. The course draws students' attention to the environmental significance and the necessity of regulating our behaviour to avoid harming it.
(Prerequisite: None)

LIB101 - Introduction to Library Science
This course introduces the library sciences. It gives a general historical review of the evelopment of libraries through the ages and sheds light on the importance of libraries in the development of knowledge and sciences. The course reviews the services the libraries introduce to those who may want to benefit.
(Prerequisite: None)

CS205 - Computer Applications
This course includes the following topics: using a word processing programme to write reports, using a spreadsheet software programme to create an elementary accounting programme, using a database software programme to design an elementary information system.
(Prerequisite: CS104)

College Compulsory Courses

BA303 - Methods of Scientific Research
This course studies the scope and significance of business research. It introduces the various aspects of business research, its types, tools and methods. Students will learn how to apply business research techniques to real-world situations. The course covers topics such as identifying a topic by the student, proposition of hypothesis, formulation of research inquiries, development of literature review, and all aspects of selecting research design and methodologies. Additionally, the students will learn data collection techniques; primary and secondary data with application to specific problems, scaling and research instrument design and sampling design.
(Prerequisite: None)

MATH101 - Business Mathematics
This course focuses on business mathematics topics such as set theory, distance formula, line equations, matrices, integration and derivation. During this course, the student will learn the various types of functions and be able to solve and sketch functions. The course will also generally increase the student's ability and mathematics skills.
(Prerequisite: None)

STA101 - Principles of Statistics
This course deals with collecting, processing, presenting, and interpreting measurements or observations, including all aspects of data handling. Thus, data constitutes the raw material we deal with statistics, and its collection is of major concern in any statistical investigation. The topics covered are concepts, tools, techniques and methods of statistics, data managing techniques, descriptive tools, and inferential statistics.
(Prerequisite: MATH101)

ECO104 - Principles of Microeconomics
This course studies the methods of meeting the needs of society within limited resources, in addition to the conduct of individuals and economic institutions' behaviour in marketing decision-making. The course also includes consumption decisions made by individuals and production decisions made by industrial institutions.
(Prerequisite: None)

ECO105 - Principles of Macroeconomics
This course includes the calculation and analysis of national income in various ways. It also deals with the economic criteria, inflation and unemployment, the cash effects on the economy, policies and overall balances that lead to economic stability, such as fiscal and monetary policies. Moreover, it deals with the rate of economic growth and foreign trade.
(Prerequisite: ECO104)

BA 101 - Principles of Management 1
This is an introductory course for studying management and its role in organisations. It introduces the ideas of managerial levels, skills and management concepts, and develops their understanding of how successful employees and managers operate. The course begins with a historical overview of the Management field and the evolution of management thoughts. Additionally, the course focuses on the management process/ managerial functions such as planning, organising, leading, and controlling.
(Prerequisite: None)

BA211 - Principles of Marketing
This course focuses on the essentials of marketing, its nature and scope that are crucial to the organisation's success in a dynamic environment. The course provides a broad background on the marketing concept and the role of marketing

within the organisation and the external environment. Moreover, it introduces some basic and advanced marketing tools. During this course, the student will learn to think like a marketer and understand how marketing managers use marketing elements to enable their business organisation to gain a competitive advantage.
(Prerequisite: BA101)

ACC101 - Principles of Accounting 1
This course concentrates on basic accounting concepts, principles and assumptions, basic accounting equations, the accounting cycle (journalising, posting, preparation of a trial balance, financial statement), adjusting entries, the accounting cycle for a merchandising company, and computing inventory cost under periodic and perpetual inventory systems.
(Prerequisite: None)

POL 101- Introduction to Political Sciences
The course aims to identify basic concepts and terminology, such as the concept of politics, political science, the relationship between political science and other humanities, methods of research in political science, key concepts of political science, such as the state, its concept, origin and functions, types of states, forms of government, political parties, lobby and interest groups, public opinion,

and issues of international relations, such as foreign policy, the international system, and international organisations.
(Prerequisite: None)

Programme Compulsory Courses

POL101 - Introduction to Political Sciences
The course aims to identify basic concepts and terminology, such as the concept of politics, political science, the relationship between political science and other humanities, methods of research in political science, key concepts of political science, such as the state, its concept, origin and functions, types of states, forms of government, political parties, lobby and interest groups, public opinion, and issues of international relations, such as foreign policy, the international system, and international organisations.
(Prerequisite: None)

POL131 - Principles of International Relations
This course is designed to receive detailed knowledge of the theories, concepts and core principles in the International Relations field and familiarise with the most significant transformations and interactions related to the international arena through the study of the concept of international relations and related concepts, and access to the methods of studying international relations. The course also deals with the stages of development of the international political system and its characteristics and the most important factors affecting it, besides the study of foreign policy, its objectives and mechanisms of implementation, and the study of national power in international relations, the research into the phenomenon of international conflict, and stand on the power balance system and collective security system in international relations, as well as identifying of military alliances and the main images of international wars.
(Prerequisite: None)

POL124 - Principles of Law
This course is designed to provide students with detailed knowledge and understanding of the concept of law and its characteristics, the concept of legal regulation and its types, the relationship of law to social sciences, and the general law and its various categories. The course includes the definition of the right, its types and individuals, the legal protection of the right, the concept of legislation and types of legislation, and ways of enacting such legislation. It involves the concept of legal personality, which is addressed in terms of characteristics and types.
(Prerequisite: None)

POL121 - Comparative political systems
This course deals with detailed knowledge and understanding of comparative political systems from a comparative analytical perspective, based on many approaches to the study of the comparative political system with a focus on studying the characteristics of different political systems of government, such as presidential, parliamentary, mixed and parliamentary systems. The study includes applied models, such as the American system, the British system, the Swiss system and the French system, and other models of developing countries' systems, in addition to the future of political systems under globalisation. (Prerequisite: POL101)

POL125 - Constitutional Law

This course is designed to provide students with detailed knowledge and understanding of the concept of Constitution and Constitutional Law, the origins of constitutions, the methods and types of constitutions, and the information use and systematising to analyse the relationship between the Constitution and the political system and the reasons for the supremacy of constitutional rules. The course provides information and ideas to compare the ways of amending constitutions, monitoring the constitutionality and the different ways of terminating constitutions, and analysing the development of the Bahraini constitutional system. (Prerequisite: POL124)

POL211 - Ancient & Medieval Systems

This course is designed to cover detailed knowledge, understanding, basic skills and some advanced skills in the environment generating political ideas in the civilisations of the ancient East, Western and Islamic civilisations in ancient and medieval times, with the study of models for the great thinkers of Western civilisation (Greek, Roman and Christian culture), and Islamic Al-Farabi, Al-Mawardi, Al-Ghazali, and Ibn Khaldun, to combine old and contemporary ideas. This requires understanding political phenomena and examining the main issues that have preoccupied political opinion in ancient and medieval times.
(Prerequisite: POL101)

POL268 - Readings in Politics (E)

This course is designed to provide students with advanced knowledge and understanding of the rentier state; economic interdependence; and oil politics, food and water security in the Middle East. This course is also structured to enable students to use advanced-level skills to deal with advanced and some complex topics such as refugees. Use a range of approaches to critically analyse several political topics like public policy-making, climate change, stability, governance, expatriates, and Arab integration.
(Prerequisite: ENG102 + POL101)

POL234 - International Organizations

This course is designed to provide advanced knowledge and skills in international organisations. It deals with studying international organisations as active units in the international system and other units, where their concept, historical origin, objectives, membership conditions, and institutional structure are addressed. It also studies legally and functionally its personality at the international and regional levels. It also discusses the study of international and regional organisations and the criteria of discrimination between them. It also assesses the functions and work of international organisations, their effectiveness in the international system, and analyses the impact of globalisation and international variables on the effectiveness of international regulation. It focuses as models on the United Nations, its branches and specialised agencies, the League of Arab States, and the Gulf Cooperation Council.
(Prerequisite: POL131)

POL251 - Political Sociology

This course is designed to provide students with advanced knowledge of some topics of political sociology, a wide range of assessment and critical methods, and some advanced skills in communication, presentation of ideas and working in changing contexts throughout the main topics of political sociology such as the relationship of the state with society and the concept of modern civil society, political elites and their sources of power, public opinion and its significance

and methods of measurement, bureaucracy, political culture, political upbringing, ideology, political participation, political parties, lobby and interest groups, and theories of development in developing countries.
(Prerequisite: POL101)

POL233 - Geopolitics
This course is designed to provide advanced knowledge and skills in geopolitics. It deals with the basic concepts and elements of geopolitics, Methods of scientific research in this specialisation, natural, human and economic elements of the state, its impact on its domestic political behaviour, their regional and international role, and the relationship between international relations and geopolitics, theories of power and its impact on international politics and developments in this matter, the impact of technological progress on geopolitics and its modern concepts, the introduction of models for some regional disputes over water and borders with a focus on the geopolitical characteristics of the Arab world, including the Gulf region and particularly the Kingdom of Bahrain.
(Prerequisite: POL131)

POL322 - Bahrain's Political System
This course is designed to cover advanced skills and knowledge of the characteristics and environment of the Bahraini political system, the constitutional and legal framework of the Bahraini regime, including the organisation of public authorities and their relationship, in addition to studying the internal and external operations of the Bahraini political system in which the dynamic nature of the system is shown.
(Prerequisite: POL121)

POL312 - Modern & Contemporary Political Thought
This course is designed to cover advanced knowledge, skills and some specialised skills in the environment that generates political ideas in modern and contemporary times, with the study of models for the great thinkers of Western civilisation (Martin Luther, Jean Calvin, Machiavelli, Thomas Hobbes, John Locke and Jean-Jacques Rousseau, Karl Marx, etc.), and Arab and Islamic (such as Mohammed Abdo, Abdul Rahman al-Kawakibi, Malik bin Nabi, Ismail Faruqi, and Muhammad Abed al-Jabri), to link reformist ideas with the current reality, which entails focusing on understanding political phenomena and studying the main issues that have occupied political thinking in modern and contemporary times.
(Prerequisite: POL211)

POL325 - Arab Political Systems
This course is designed to cover advanced skills and knowledge of the characteristics of Arab political systems, classification criteria, their environment and decision-making mechanisms, the constitutional and legal framework, ideologies prevailing in the Arab world, and institutions of Arab civil society. The course includes a description of the Arab regional and sub-regional systems throughout the study of their internal and external environment and some models of Arab political systems and their general features and the most important issues, in addition to models for some Arab political systems.
(Prerequisite: POL121)

POL313 - Political Theory

This course is designed to cover advanced knowledge and skills and some specialised skills in political theory and its relationship with other branches of political science, topics at the heart of political phenomena, theoretical methods used in the past, and the tools of analysis used recently, scientific method empirical, behavioural school, post- behavioural school, the set of models used in the framework of the analysis of the national policy world (structural, functional, systematic and cultural), and the set of theories used in the framework of the analysis of the international policy world (communication theory, theories of automatic equilibrium, and theories of equilibrium).
(Prerequisite: POL 312)

POL342 - Comparative Foreign Policy

This course is designed to cover advanced knowledge and skills in the foreign policy concept and its most important concepts, its tools, research methods in the Study and Analysis field and internal and external factors affecting the foreign policy-making of States. At the same time, the applied side includes a comparative study of models of foreign policies of countries, the big countries particularly, such as the foreign policy of the United States of America and Russia, and the unified foreign policy of the European Union countries, and the foreign policy of developing countries, are compared at two levels: in particular topics, such as objectives and determinants, and the level of study of the foreign policy of these countries through their attitudes towards the Arab region.
(Prerequisite: POL 233)

POL327 - Public Administration

This course deals with the study of advanced knowledge and understanding of public administration from an analytical perspective, based on many approaches to management study, with a focus on studying the four functions of public administration such as planning, organisation, leadership and control. The course includes the bureaucratic issues in the state's administrative apparatus, centralisation and decentralisation, and linking decentralisation to local development. Finally, there is a practical part of the administrative system of the Kingdom of Bahrain.
(Prerequisite: POL121)

POL361 - Methodology of Political Science

This course is designed to provide students with critical knowledge and specialised skills in the curricula of political science research. This course deals with the detailed concepts in political science research, the study of political phenomenon and analysis, ethics of scientific research and intellectual property. It examines the research strategies included in quantitative, qualitative and mixed research methods. The course is also exposed practically to many methods, such as workshops to prepare a plan and research report. It also includes training students to work in a research team, collecting and organising data and information, and then using them and presenting scientific works.
(Prerequisite: BA 303)

POL354 - Public Opinion and Media

The course deals with the definition of public opinion and the media, origin and development, and their relationship with some other social sciences. The course deals with the factors of formation and change of public opinion and its features, characteristics, types and behavioural aspects in public opinion and the role of the media in its formation. It also examines the relationship between the media and public opinion. On the one hand, the political authority on the other, and the

leadership role of society and political authority over the media. The course examines the differences between opinion, direction, behaviour and the distinction between public opinion and rumours. It also examines the impact of modern media on political life in society.
(Prerequisite: POL 251)

POL343 - Diplomacy in Theory & Practice
This course is designed to provide students with detailed and critical knowledge and specialised skills in diplomatic work, starting with the role of international diplomatic work, particularly in the light of globalisation and the communications revolution, and the concept of the diplomatic corps and its functions, throughout the study of the preparation of diplomatic cadres, such as organisations and specialised institutions, and the function of diplomatic language, and conduct a critical analysis of the central and subsidiary organs of the Department of External Relations, the impact of public opinion on diplomatic decision-making, the forms of diplomatic work, the permanent bilateral diplomatic exchange system, the sources of its rules and the conditions of its practice to identify the problems of contemporary diplomacy and identify and implement solutions related to them, and then evaluate some types of diplomacy, such as preventive diplomacy and coercive diplomacy and secret diplomacy, and public diplomacy and popular diplomacy.
(Prerequisite: P0L 234)

POL362 - Internship
This course is designed to equip political science students with experience, bridge the gap between scientific theories, concepts and practical practices, and apply the specialised skills studied, which increases the chances of professional success and career advancement in the workplace. This course also helps the student to communicate in a specialised manner with his colleagues and blend smoothly into the work environment.
(Prerequisite: 90 Credit Hours)

POL 439 - Contemporary International Issues (E)
This course is designed to provide students with critical knowledge about several contemporary issues that will continue to influence international politics for many years, such as terrorism and nuclear proliferation. This course is framed to enable students to use specialist-level skills to deal with advanced issues, such as international terrorism and efforts to combat it, refugees and human rights issues, racial discrimination, environmental issues and climate change.
(Prerequisite POL131 + POL268)

POL 451 - Political Development
This course is designed to provide students with critical knowledge and specialised skills in political development, political backwardness and related concepts. The course also examines the causes, consequences and effects of political underdevelopment, theories, trends, proposals, approaches and details of political development, and the emergence and development of the study of political development and its tools. The student studies various crises of political development and their relationship with nation-building and development of the capabilities of the political system, and the building of state institutions and good governance. The student concludes with a study of case studies in the Political Development field.
(Prerequisite: POL 251)

POL465 - Ethics in Politics
This course is designed to provide a critical knowledge of the ethics concept. The concepts associated with it, and have detailed knowledge of the various approaches to the study of ethics in politics, conduct a critical analysis of the study of ethics in Western and Islamic political thought, and addresses models of political ethical value, such as justice, equality and integrity, and respect for human rights, and accountability and the rule of law, environmental issues, rules of war, humanitarian intervention in times of war and disaster, and the efforts of the international community in these various aspects.
(Prerequisite: POL 313)

POL433 - International Economic System (E)
This course is designed to provide students with critical knowledge about the international economic system, such as the concept of the international economic system and the development of the international economy. This course is framed to enable students to use specialist skills to deal with advanced issues such as the development of the international economic system, policies of international trade, international finance and economic development issues. This course also deals with international economic crises such as the international monetary system crisis, technology transfer crisis, external debt, energy crisis, and global financial crises.
(Prerequisite: POL131 + POL268)

POL434 - The Theories of International Relations
This course is designed to provide critical knowledge of the theoretical frameworks and concepts related to international relations and to have detailed knowledge of traditional and contemporary theories, the British and Chinese theorists of international relations, then deal with critical theory, post-structuralism, structuralism theory, feminist theory, green theory, and peaceful evolution theory. (Prerequisite: POL433)

POL464 - Applied Research in Political Science
This course is designed to provide students with specialised skills to investigate problems and carry out scientific research to address them. This course deals with an introduction to applied research, research methods, selection of research topic, reviews of previous studies, identification of research problem, questions and methodology, discussion of the research plan, data collection and analysis, writing the final report of the research and self-assessment report.
(Prerequisite: POL361 + POL362)

Programme Elective Courses

POL366 - Special Topics in Political Science
This course is designed to provide critical knowledge of selected and influential political events in today's international life, which are separatist, populist and cyber movements where countries in the world generally and the Arab world particularly are affected by separatist movements of varying motives. Populism also affects public life in countries with international influence, such as the United States, Germany and some Western European countries. The course took care of cyberspace from the point of view of a phenomenon that reflects the impact of tremendous technological progress on the dimensions of a security and political nature. Therefore, besides providing in-depth knowledge of these topics, the Rapporteur will be concerned about conducting a critical analysis of the study and its discussion.

(Prerequisite: POL 251)

POL 432 - Arab's Neighboring Countries
This course is designed to provide students with critical and detailed knowledge of the definition of the neighbouring countries and the external orientations of these countries towards the Arab countries due to the geographical locations of the different parties throughout addressing the policies adopted by the neighbouring countries towards the Arab countries, and how to address some of the key issues that matter to these countries, such as national security, border problems, water crisis and minorities.
(Prerequisite: POL233)

POL 414 - Contemporary Political Ideology
This course is designed to cover critical knowledge, skills and specialised methods in the concept of ideology, its characteristics and functions, what is the state, criteria for classifying ideologies, opinions and their political role in societies, and assessing the political use of ideology. The course also addresses a number of contemporary ideologies: liberalism, socialism, communism, fascism, Islamic movements, Arab nationalism, feminism, etc.) and its main thinkers.
(Prerequisite: POL 312)

POL 353 - Political Parties
The course aims to provide students with specialised concepts in relation to the study of the partisan phenomenon and in terms of concept, pillars, origins and roles. It also provides students with critical knowledge about building political parties and criticism, their relationship to the political system, and theoretical trends related to political parties. The course explains political and ideological parties and indicators to measure the effectiveness of parties and political parties, communication, political marketing and public opinion. The course also teaches students about the parties and party practices in Western Europe, the United States, the Arab world and other developing countries.
(Prerequisite: POL251)

POL 467 - Strategic Studies
This course is designed to address critical knowledge and understanding of theories in the conceptual framework of the strategy and related terminology, strategy attributes, the nature of the strategic environment, the effects of the strategic environment, strategic thinking, and the relationship between policymaker and strategist. This course is designed to understand contemporary issues and utilise specialised skills to deal with sophisticated situations in the strategy industry and its effects on the levels and the international environment. This course also concerns strategic assessment, strategy formulation, and study of American strategy.
(Prerequisite: POL233)

POL 326 - Electoral systems
This course deals with an analytical and comparative study of the electoral system, throughout the study of the concepts and terms associated with the voting systems, its legal adaptation, the basics and methods of elections, the preparatory procedures for the elections, the objectives, types and formats of different voting systems. The course stands on the most important electoral system and its characteristics and features and highlights the importance of the relationship between the electoral system and democracy. The study also includes practical models of modern and contemporary electoral systems.

(Prerequisite: POL121)

POL 436 - International Crises Management

This course is designed to address critical knowledge of international crisis management and its associated concepts, understand contemporary issues arising from international crises, and utilise specialised skills to deal with sophisticated situations to apply and analyse knowledge or practices in international crisis management, their causes, their characteristics, their types and methods of management. The course also deals with crisis containment and management, and the steps of restoring the situation, balancing after the end of the crisis and overcoming the consequences of the crisis. The course also studies the relationship of mutual impact between the management of international crises and the structure of the international system, the role of information and communication technologies in crisis management, and models of international crisis management.
(Prerequisite: POL234)

POL431 - Negotiation Skills

This course is designed to provide students with detailed and critical knowledge and specialised skills in the art of negotiation. The course deals with the concept of negotiation, its objectives, and its historical development. It also deals with negotiating methods, elements of the negotiation process and principles of negotiation science in social, economic, political and military issues. The course focuses on the human element in the negotiation process, the skills and rules of negotiation and psychological and moral aspects. Moreover, it deals with studying the negotiation controls of various kinds and negotiation strategies, in addition to studying the stages of the negotiation process through practical models in the issues of negotiations and tactics used in the bargaining.
(Prerequisite: POL343)

Bachelor of Accounting

ASU
جامعة العلوم التطبيقية
APPLIED SCIENCE UNIVERSITY

Programme Coordinator:
Dr. Mohammed Qeshta

Office Number:
+973 16036306

Email:
mohammed.qeshta@asu.edu.bh

Head of Department
Dr. Anwar Gasaymeh

Office Number:
+973 16036050

Email:
anwar.gasaymeh@asu.edu.bh

Apply Now

Enquiry

Programme Details

Final Qualification	Language of Study	Mode of Study
Bachelor Degree	Arabic	Full Time

Programme Structure

Study Period	Total Credit Hours	Number of Courses
4 Years	135 Credit Hours	45 Courses

Brief about the Programme

Start your journey towards a promising professional future with the Bachelor of Accounting programme, designed in accordance with the National Qualifications Framework to align with the needs of the local and regional labour market, qualifying you with deliberate steps towards professional excellence. The programme offers a comprehensive and sequential curriculum that combines theoretical and practical application, providing you with the foundations of accounting and financial knowledge and skills that enable you to work with high efficiency in both the public and private sectors. Through this programme, you will gain the competence and confidence to become part of the new accounting generation capable of making a difference, and you will be qualified to take up distinguished positions in accounting, financial analysis, and financial reporting.

Aims of the Programme

1. Provide graduates with a comprehensive and critical understanding of accounting and related fields.
2. Prepare graduates to be capable of using specialised skills in accounting and related fields to handle advanced situations in the work environment.
3. Develop graduates› skills in using critical analysis and evaluation of information, concepts, skills, and practices in accounting and related fields, and providing appropriate solutions.
4. Develop graduates› specific skills for communicating with peers and specialists.
5. Prepare graduates to work at a specialist level and lead groups in a changing business environment and take responsibility for decision-making and for the work of others.

The first university in the Kingdom of Bahrain to achieve global accreditation from the British Quality Assurance Agency for Higher Education (QAA)

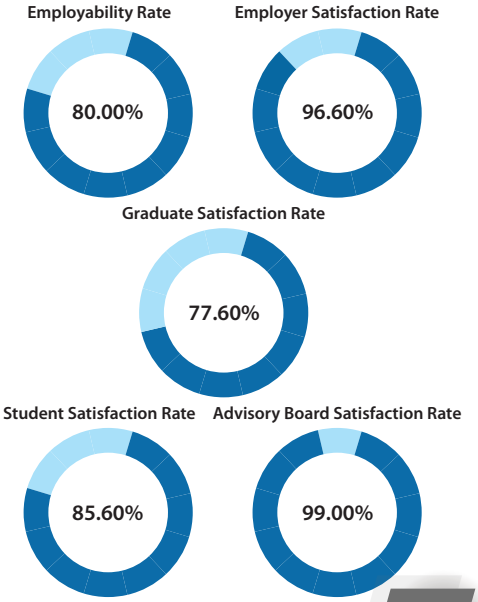
Rated 5 Stars in the QS Rating System

Ranked 30th in the QS Arab Region University Rankings 2026

Ranked 613 in the QS World University Rankings 2026

Ranked 301+ Worldwide in the Times Higher Education University Impact Rankings

General Statistics



Career Paths

1. Financial Accountant
2. Auditor
3. Cost Accountant
4. Tax Accountant
5. Financial Analyst
6. Financial Controller
7. Treasurer
8. Budget Analyst

Entry Requirements

1. The applicant must hold a secondary school certificate certified by the Ministry of Education in the Kingdom of Bahrain or its equivalent with a minimum grade of 60% or equivalent.
2. Students with a grade below 60% may register if they meet one of the following conditions:
   - From the talented category (such as athletes, entrepreneurs, inventors, artists and authors with international participations, and their equivalents).
   - Those who have sufficient work experience of not less than one year after obtaining the secondary school certificate.
3. Students admitted to the programme from non-scientific secondary tracks (or their equivalent) must complete remedial courses determined by the department.
4. Transfer students are accepted according to the university›s bachelor›s degree award regulations.
5. In addition, the University Council has the right to decide on applications from students with grades below 60%.
6. The number of students admitted under point (2) must not exceed 5% of the total admitted students.
7. All admitted students must take a mandatory English language placement test:
   - Students scoring between 0–40 must study the English Language Remedial course (ENG 099).
   - Students are exempted from ENG 099 if they obtain 5 or above in IELTS, or 450 or above in TOEFL.

Study Plan

No.	Course Code	Course Title	Prerequisite	ASU Credit	NQF Credit	NQF Level
Year 1 – First Semester (15 Cr)						
1	ACC101	Principles of Accounting I	---	3	12	5
2	CS104	Computer Skills	---	3	12	5
3	ENG101	English Language I	---	3	12	5
4	MATH101	Business Mathematics	---	3	12	5
5	-	University Elective (1)	---	3	12	5
Year 1 – Second Semester (15 Cr)						
1	BA101	Principles of Management I	---	3	12	5
2	POL101	Introduction to Political Sciences	---	3	12	5
3	ENG102	English Language II	ENG101	3	12	5
4	HR106	Human Rights	---	3	12	5
5	ACC102	Principles of Accounting II	ACC101	3	12	5
Year 2 – First Semester (18 Cr)						
1	ARB101	Arabic Language	---	3	12	6
2	BA161	Introduction to Entrepreneurship	---	3	12	6
3	ECO104	Principles of Microeconomics	---			
4	HBH105	Bahrain Civilization & History	---	3	12	6
5	STA101	Principles of Statistics	MATH101	3	12	6
6	ACC201	Intermediate Accounting I	ACC102	3	12	6
Year 2 – Second Semester (18 Cr)						
1	BA211	Principles of Marketing	BA101	3	12	6
2	ACC221	Cost Accounting	ACC101	3	12	6
3	FIN251	Financial Management	ACC101	3	12	6
4	LAW021	Principles of Commercial Law	---	3	12	6
5	ACC202	Intermediate Accounting II	ACC201	3	12	6
6	-	University Elective (2)	---	3	12	6
Year 3 – First Semester (18 Cr)						
1	ACC231	Taxation Accounting	ACC102	3	12	7
2	FIN352	Markets and Financial Institutions	FIN251	3	12	7
3	ACC302	Advanced Accounting	ACC102	3	12	7
4	ACC324	Managerial Accounting	ACC221	3	12	7
5	ACC343	Government Accounting	ACC102	3	12	7
6	ECO105	Principles of Macroeconomics	ECO104	3	12	7
Year 3 – Second Semester (15 Cr)						

1	ACC360	Auditing	ACC102	3	12	7
2	FIN354	Islamic Finance and Banking	FIN251	3	12	7
3	BA241	Quantitative Methods in Management (E)	STA101 + ENG102	3	12	7
4	BA303	Methods of Scientific Research	-	3	12	7
5	ACC371	Digital Accounting (E)	ENG102+ACC102+ CS104	3	12	7
Year 4 – First Semester (18 Cr)						
1	FIN453	Investment	FIN251	3	12	8
2	ACC410	Accounting for Islamic Financial Institutions	FIN354	3	12	8
3	ACC466	Governance and Profession Ethics	ACC102	3	12	8
4	ACC491	Internship (Accounting)	90 Credit Hours	3	12	8
5	ACC460	Digital Auditing (E)	ACC360	3	12	8
6	-	Programme Elective (1)	-	3	12	8
Year 4 – Second Semester (18 Cr)						
1	ACC403	Corporate Reporting	ACC201	3	12	8
2	FIN458	Risk Management	FIN251	3	12	8
3	ACC471	Accounting Information Systems	ACC371	3	12	8
4	ACC499	Applied Research in Accounting	ACC491 + BA303	3	12	8
5	ACC404	Financial Analysis E	ACC201 + FIN251 + ENG102	3	12	8
6	-	Programme Elective (2)	-	3	12	8

University Elective Courses						
No.	**Course Code**	**Course Title**	**Prerequisite**	**ASU Credit**	**NQF Credit**	**NQF Level**
Group 1 (3 Cr)						
1	ISL101	Islamic Culture	---	3	12	6
2	ISL102	Islamic Ethic	---	3	12	6
3	ISL103	Islam & Contemporary Issues	---	3	12	6
Group 2 (3 Cr)						
1	LIB101	Introduction to Library Science	---	3	12	5
2	MAN101	Man and Environment	---	3	12	5
3	SOC101	Introduction to Sociology	---	3	12	5
4	SPT101	Special Topics	---	3	12	5
5	CS205	Computer Applications	CS104	3	12	5
6	LFS102	Thinking and communication skills development	---	3	12	5

Programme Elective Courses						
No.	**Course Code**	**Course Title**	**Prerequisite**	**ASU Credit**	**NQF Credit**	**NQF Level**
Group 1 (6 Cr)						
1	ACC480	Accounting Theory	ACC201	3	12	8
2	ACC481	Contemporary Issues in Accounting	ACC201	3	12	8
3	ACC482	International Accounting	ACC201	3	12	8
4	FIN456	Insurance and Takaful	FIN251	3	12	8
5	FIN457	Financial Planning and Personal Finance	FIN251	3	12	8
6	FIN459	Technology and Financial Innovation	FIN251	3	12	8

University Compulsory Courses

ARB101- Arabic Language

This course deals with issues related to Arabic grammar and literature. It studies some basic linguistic issues in the vocabulary, morphology, syntax, and semantics of Arabic. It also studies stylistic and literary features through analysing and discussing some selected texts from the holy Quran and other literary masterpieces.
(Prerequisite: None)

ENG101 - English Language (I)

ENG101 is a credit course that runs for one semester of 15 weeks for 3 or 6 hours per week during the summer semester. It is required for students of Law, Political Science, Business Administration, and Art and Design Bachelor Programmes delivered in Arabic. This course is for learners whose achievement in the Oxford Online Placement Test (OOPT) is 41 or higher. The course provides practice in reading, writing, and note-taking at the Intermediate level. It includes academic English, study skills and various reading texts and text types. The course is intended to improve students' English language skills to undertake a further English credit course, ENG102, and use English in their studies as needed. (Prerequisite: None)

ENG102 - English Language (II)

ENG102 is a credit course that runs for one semester of 15 weeks for 3 or 6 hours per week during the summer semester. It is required for students of Law, Political Science, Business Administration, and Art and Design Bachelor Programmes delivered in Arabic. This course is for learners who have completed ENG101. The course provides practice in reading, writing, and note-taking at the upper-intermediate level. It includes academic English, study skills and various reading texts and text types. The course is intended to improve students' English language skills to undertake various credit courses and use English in their studies as needed.
(Prerequisite: ENG101)

CS104 - Computer Skills

This course covers the following topics: basic information technology concepts, using the computer to manage files, word processing, spreadsheets, presentation and database.
(Prerequisite: None)

BA161 - Introduction to Entrepreneurship

This course aims to study the concept of entrepreneurship, explain its implications and significance, and provide students with the knowledge and skills necessary to transform ideas into applied entrepreneurial projects in accordance with the rules of founding entrepreneurial projects. Moreover, the course aims to provide students with the core skills of an entrepreneur, starting from establishing the project, choosing the legal formula for it, planning, organising, marketing, and financing until the whole process is fully managed while enabling students to submit proposals to establish a commercial project and discuss it at the end of the semester. Finally, the course aims to study practical cases for pioneering projects in the Kingdom of Bahrain.
(Prerequisite: None)

HBH105 - Bahrain Civilization & History
This course deals with the history of Bahrain from 1500-1800. It studies the stages of the Portuguese invasion of this part of the world and the international power struggle that erupted after the invasion. It also deals with the ruling of Al- Utuub Tribe of Bahrain and the reign of Al Khalifa thereafter.
(Prerequisite: None)

HR106 - Human Rights
This course discusses the basic principles of human rights. It acquaints the students with the nature of human rights; their realms and sources, paying special attention to the international legal provisions concerning human rights included in the following documents: United Nations Charter, International Declaration of Human Rights, International Accord on Civil and Political Rights, International Accord on Social and Economic Rights, International agreement against torture and inhumane, disrespectful punishment, and Protection mechanisms and constitutional organisation of public rights and freedoms in the Kingdom of Bahrain. (Prerequisite: None)

University Elective Courses

ISL 101 Islamic Culture
The course deals with the concept of "Culture" in general and the concept of "Islamic Culture" in particular, and other related concepts. Thus, the course studies the characteristics of the Islamic culture, its sources, fields of study, and its role in creating the "Islamic character". It also deals with the so-called "cultural invasion", its types, methodologies, and other related issues.
(Prerequisite- None)

ISL103 - Islam & Contemporary Issues
This course deals with the way Islam deals with contemporary issues such as the phenomenon of fanaticism, determination of the Islamic calendar, alms tax (Zakat) on money and jewellery, democracy and government system, and other scientific and cultural developments.
(Prerequisite- None)

ISL102 - Islamic Ethics
This course is an Elective University Requirement. It stresses the importance of ethics in Islam and the value Islam gives to ethics in general and work ethics in particular. The course draws general comparisons of the treatment of ethics along different ages in the history of Islam. According to Islam, it offers insights into the possible tools to enhance work ethics. (Prerequisite- None)

SPT101 - Special Topics
This course is an Elective University Requirement. It deals with special contemporary topics that are important to university students, and the topics dealt with may be economic, social, historical, or political.
(Prerequisite- None)

LFS102 - Thinking and communications skills development
This course is a university requirement. It introduces the concept of thinking, its characteristics, its forms and its importance in the educational process. The course also deals with applying modern strategies and theories interpreted for different kinds of thinking. The course deals in detail with aspects of communication skills to improve the students' skills in overcoming communicative barriers when communicating in various situations and for various purposes. (Prerequisite- None)

SOC101 - Introduction to Sociology
The course introduces the students to Sociology; the scientific study of society. Thus, the course stresses social interaction processes and their impact on the members of any society. The course provides students with the knowledge of the main social phenomena and the components of social structure.
(Prerequisite- None)

MAN101 - Man and Environment
This course deals with issues related to the relationship between human beings and the environment they live in, with special attention to the environment of the students at the University. The course draws students' attention to the environmental significance and the necessity of regulating our behaviour to avoid harming it.
(Prerequisite: None)

LIB101 - Introduction to Library Science
This course introduces the library sciences. It gives a general historical review of the development of libraries through the ages and sheds light on the importance of libraries in the development of knowledge and sciences. The course reviews the services the libraries introduce to those who may want to benefit.
(Prerequisite: None)

CS205 - Computer Applications
This course includes the following topics: using a word processing programme to write reports, using a spreadsheet software programme to create an elementary accounting programme, using a database software programme to design an elementary information system.
(Prerequisite: CS104)

Programme Compulsory Courses

LAW021 - Principles of Commercial Law
This course deals with the study of the principles of commercial law through a preliminary section about the appearance of commercial law and the development of its sources. The first section deals with the commercial business with its different types, and the second section discusses the subject of the trader and the trading shop was discussed. Finally, the third section discusses general provisions and types of commercial contracts.
(Prerequisite: None)

ACC102- Principles of Accounting (2)
This course is considered an extension to Accounting Principles (1) and is This course is considered an extension to Accounting Principles (1) and is designed to cover basic skills and detailed

knowledge of measurement and disclosure of cash, accounts receivables and notes receivables, tangible fixed assets, natural resources, intangible assets, current and non-current liabilities, partnership and corporations, capital formation, and dividends and retained earnings. (Prerequisite: ACC101)

ACC231- Taxation Accounting

This course aims to provide students with detailed knowledge and basic skills in tax accounting. The course covers an introduction to tax, income tax, exemptions, acceptable and unacceptable deductions, calculation and payment of income tax due, taxation objections, and a tax assessment. Sales tax and value-added tax and their calculation and accounting treatment, taxation in Bahrain and the GCC countries.
(Prerequisite: ACC102)

BA241 - Quantitative Methods in Management (E)

This course provides an introduction to the concept, theories and principles associated with and application of quantitative methods in Management. It develops the mathematical and statistical competence necessary to facilitate progression in areas such as Operation Management necessary for decision making. The course builds on concepts and analytical techniques taught in (STA 101) Principles of Statistics, developing more advanced quantitative methods, such as Linear Programming and Sensitivity and Duality Theory, Transportation, Assignment Problems, and Networks. Quantitative methods are used throughout the economy business, government and non-profit sectors. At a minimum, effective participation in decision-making will enable the students to understand and interpret statistical reports. (Prerequisite: STA101 + ENG102)

FIN251- Financial Management

This course introduces financial management concepts and tools. It focuses on decision-making in a financial context. Therefore, the course examines the techniques and methods used in business organisations to make decisions consistent with efforts to increase the owner's wealth in the corporate environment. Topics covered include, but are not limited to, financial analysis, time value of money, capital budgeting, risk and return, valuation of future cash flows, valuation of stocks and bonds, and long-term financing.
(Prerequisite: ACC101)

ACC302 - Advanced Accounting

The course is designed to cover the topics of advanced accounting such as accounting treatment for mergers, consolidation and acquisition using the purchase method and the consolidation of interests method, the consolidated financial statements at the date of consolidation and after the date of consolidation, the procedures for preparing them under the purchase method and the consolidation of interests method, accounting for investment in securities, mutual transactions related to inventory, fixed assets and bonds, foreign exchange and reserves for the risks of transfers, translation of financial statements of foreign currencies.
(Prerequisite: ACC102)

ACC324- Managerial Accounting

This course aims to equip students with specific decision-making and control competencies, enabling them to evaluate, select and apply various management accounting techniques. The main topics covered cost behaviour, cost-volume- profit analysis, advanced integrated planning and

budgeting concepts, performance management in decentralised organisations, relevant decision-making in various scenarios, and price setting for internal and external purposes. (Prerequisite: ACC221)

ACC341- Government Accounting
This course is designed to cover a number of topics related to government accounting. It includes the accounting principles for government accounting, the general state budget, its rules, classifications and development, the accounting measurement basis used in government accounting, the government accounting system in the Kingdom of Bahrain, samples of the state budget and final accounts for the kingdom.
(Prerequisite: ACC102)

FIN352- Markets and Financial Institutions
This course is designed to cover advanced skills and knowledge in the following topics: the nature of financial markets and institutions, their characteristics, functions and types, including the capital market, the money market, the mortgage market, the derivatives market and the foreign exchange market, the financial instruments traded in these markets, how they are traded and priced, the participants in these markets, the problems faced by the financial markets and how to develop these markets and raise their efficiency, the nature of financial institutions, their objectives and their role in economic development and money management.
(Prerequisite: FIN251)

FIN354 - Islamic Finance and Banking
This course is designed to cover advanced skills and knowledge in the following topics: principles of Islamic economics and banking system, foundations and characteristics of finance in Islamic banks, institutions supporting and organising the operation of Islamic banks and financial institutions in Bahrain and the world, the functions and objectives of Islamic banks, types of deposits and investment instruments in Islamic banks, Mudharaba, Musharaka, Ijara, Salam, Istisna'a, and various modern financial products in Islamic banks. Islamic banking services, such as credit cards, governance and Sharia auditing.
(Prerequisite: FIN251)

ACC360 - Auditing
This course is designed to cover advanced knowledge and skills in topics related to the theoretical framework and standards governing the auditing process. The course covers the philosophy and concepts of auditing, the demand for auditing and other assurance services, auditing programs, auditor working papers, audit planning auditing, generally accepted auditing standards, materiality and risk, the auditor's responsibility for detecting errors and fraud, evaluating and testing internal control systems, auditor reports, audit evidence, risk-based auditing and audit of purchases and sales cycles.
(Prerequisite: ACC102)

ACC371- Digital Accounting (E)
This course is designed to provide students with advanced knowledge and practical skills in utilising information technology in accounting. The course includes the role of information technology in the development of accounting information systems and the accounting profession, the use of information technology in the design of an accounting information system for business enterprises

and the accounting treatments related to the business cycles such as sales and customers, purchases and vendors, employees and payroll, and the general ledger cycle.
(Prerequisites: ACC102 + CS104 + ENG101)

ACC403 - Corporate Reporting
This course is designed to cover specialised skills and critical knowledge of the following topics of corporate reporting: the importance of corporate reporting, the general framework of corporate reporting, international accounting standards, international financial reporting standards, mandatory and voluntary disclosure, disclosure of non-financial information and financial performance, intellectual capital, firm value, social and environmental performance, and other types of disclosure.
(Prerequisite: ACC201)

ACC404 - Financial Analysis (E)
This course is designed to provide students with critical and detailed knowledge that enables them to conduct in-depth financial analysis. The course includes the objectives and importance of financial analysis, and focuses on financial statements (balance sheet, income statement and statement of cash flows) in analysing the firm's current financial performance to predict its future performance, using techniques such as "cash flows analysis" and "financial ratios" to understand the threats and opportunities inherent in the investment and financing decisions.
(Prerequisites: ACC201 + FIN251 + ENG102)

ACC410- Accounting for Islamic Financial Institutions
This course is designed to provide students with detailed knowledge and specialised skills in topics related to Islamic Accounting and its usage in Islamic Financial Institutions, in addition to the accounting treatment for a range of financing tools implemented by Islamic institutions and developing the student's skills in preparing the financial statements for Islamic Financial Institutions.
(Prerequisites: FIN 354)

FIN453 - Investment
This course is designed to cover specialised skills and critical knowledge of the investment concepts, the basis of the investment decision, the measurement of investment risk and return, portfolio management, investment companies, investment funds, investment analysis, technical analysis and fundamental analysis. The course concludes with

contemporary topics in investment, such as; personal investment and investment advice, investment and information technology, behavioural finance and investment psychology.
(Prerequisite: FIN251)

FIN458 - Risk Management
This course is designed to provide students with detailed knowledge and specialised skills in risk management. The course covers an introduction to risk management (concept, types, sources), liquidity risk, market risk (interest rates and foreign exchange rates), credit risk, Liability risk, operational risk, capital and fixed asset risk, risk of default and bankruptcy, as well as external risks.
(Prerequisite: FIN251)

ACC460 - Digital Auditing
This course is designed to provide students with critical knowledge and specialised skills in digital auditing. It includes the digital accounting information system environment, control objectives for information and related technology (COBIT) framework, Threats and risks of digital accounting information systems, evaluating and testing of internal control systems for digital accounting systems, auditing of digital accounting information systems and business cycles using blockchain, and other related issues.
(Prerequisite: ACC 360)

ACC466 - Governance and Profession Ethics
This course is designed to cover a range of advanced topics related to governance and professional ethics. The course deals with the principles of corporate governance, economic theories in corporate governance, Corporate Governance Charter in Bahrain, board of directors and committees, corporate social responsibility, the importance of ethics in the accounting profession, principles and codes of ethical conduct in practice, ethical conduct and its relation to corporate governance.
(Prerequisite: ACC102)

ACC471- Accounting Information Systems
This course is designed to cover a range of advanced knowledge and specialised skills in accounting information systems, including accounting system and their components, development and documentation of accounting information systems, relational databases, and analysis of the relationship between business cycles in accounting information systems, computer fraud and abuse, and accounting information systems security and control. (Prerequisite: ACC371)

ACC491- Internship (Accounting)
The course is designed to provide accounting students with the opportunity to gain experience in workplace settings and translate classroom learning into practice. It reinforces the students' practical and transferable skills for professional success and career advancement. This course enables the student to communicate with colleagues and adapt quickly to the workplace environment.
(Prerequisite: 90 Credit Hours)

ACC499 - Applied Research in Accounting
This course is designed to provide students with specialised skills to investigate problems and conduct scientific research to solve them. This course covers an introduction to applied research, research methods, selecting the research topic, reviewing related literature, defining the research problem, articulating the research questions and objectives, developing hypotheses and choosing the methodology, preparing and discussing the research proposal, collecting and analysing data, testing hypotheses, conclusions and recommendations, writing up the final draft of the research and the self-evaluation report.
(Prerequisites: ACC491 + BA303)

Programme Elective Courses

ACC480 - Accounting Theory
This course is designed to cover specialised skills and critical knowledge of the evolution of accounting theory, the objectives, concepts, assumptions and principles of accounting, the income

concept, income statement and related assumptions and principles, statement of financial position and related principles, cash flow statement and related principles, problems related to working capital, and the information content of accounting reports.
(Prerequisite: ACC201)

ACC481 - Contemporary Issues in Accounting
This course is designed to cover critical knowledge and specialised skills in the intellectual framework of creative accounting, social responsibility accounting, and green accounting. The course also covers the philosophical framework for intellectual capital and the accounting treatment of human resources, forensic accounting, value-added accounting in the light of electronic commerce, accounting treatments for lease contracts and inflation and any other emerging issues in accounting.
(Prerequisite: ACC201)

ACC482 - International Accounting
This course is designed to cover critical knowledge and specialised skills in the general framework of international accounting, foreign currency accounting, hedging of foreign currency fluctuations, preparation and analysis of consolidated financial statements in foreign currencies, accounting of foreign affiliates, analysis of International financial statements, and tax accounting from an international perspective.
(Prerequisite: ACC201)

FIN456 - Insurance and Takaful
This course is designed to cover critical knowledge and specialised skills in insurance and takaful in the following topics: introduction to insurance and takaful, types of insurance, applications of probability theory in insurance, insurance procedures and insurance policy, rules and principles of law governing insurance contract, insurance and reinsurance, the calculation of insurance premiums (Life Insurance, Property Insurance, Motor Insurance). Islamic insurance and takaful, sources and uses of funds in takaful, takaful applications, risk management, insurance and takaful sector in the Kingdom of Bahrain.
(Prerequisite: FIN251)

FIN457 - Financial Planning and Personal Finance
This course is designed to provide students with critical knowledge and specialised skills to operate at a specialist level in financial planning and personal finance. The course covers an introduction to financial planning and personal finance, financial planning and personal financial planning sector, principles of personal finance, personal finance management, personal financial decisions, personal investment decisions, planning for financial future, and the course concludes with case studies of financial planning and personal finance.
(Prerequisite: FIN251)

FIN459 - Technology and Financial Innovation
This course is designed to cover specialised skills and critical knowledge of the following topics in the Technology and Financial Innovation field: digital finance and alternative finance, electronic payments, remittances, portfolio and digital currency, group finance and mutual lending, digital banking, big data, confidentiality, privacy, technology and financial innovations in the Insurance, Investment field, financial markets, financial inclusion, and small and medium-sized enterprises, the

role central banks, laws and regulations, modern trends and the future of technology and financial innovation in the Kingdom of Bahrain.
(Prerequisite: FIN251)

Bachelor in Accounting and Finance

ASU
جامعة العلوم التطبيقية
APPLIED SCIENCE UNIVERSITY

Programme Coordinator:
Dr. Nizar Naim
Office Number:
+973 16036275
Email:
nizar.naim@asu.edu.bh

Head of Department
Dr. Anwar Gasaymeh
Office Number:
+973 16036050
Email:
anwar.gasaymeh@asu.edu.bh

Apply Now | Enquiry | Study Plan

Programme Details

Final Qualification	Language of Study	Mode of Study
Bachelor Degree	English	Full Time

Programme Structure

Study Period	Total Credit Hours	Number of Courses
4 Years	135 Credit Hours	45 Courses

Brief about the Programme

Start your journey toward a successful financial career with the Bachelor in Accounting and Finance. Delivered in English and aligned with international standards, the programme offers a strong combination of theoretical knowledge and practical skills. With accreditation from ACCA, students benefit from exemptions from professional exams, fast-tracking their path toward becoming certified professionals.

Students gain hands-on experience using tools such as the London Stock Exchange Group (LSEG) workspace, preparing them for careers in accounting, auditing, investment, and financial analysis.

Think Ahead ACCA

Aims of the Programme

1. Provide graduates with critical and comprehensive knowledge and understanding of accounting, finance, and related fields.
2. Prepare graduates to apply specialised skills in accounting, finance, and related disciplines to solve business problems in both well-defined and loosely defined contexts.
3. Develop graduates' abilities to critically analyse and evaluate accounting and financial information, concepts, and practices, and to undertake scientific research to identify complex business challenges and propose ethical solutions.
4. Develop graduates' professional skills to communicate effectively with peers and specialists using appropriate ICT tools.
5. Prepare graduates to work independently or within a team at a specialist level in a range of contexts, while assuming responsibility for decision-making and supervising others.

The first university in the Kingdom of Bahrain to achieve global accreditation from the British Quality Assurance Agency for Higher Education (QAA)

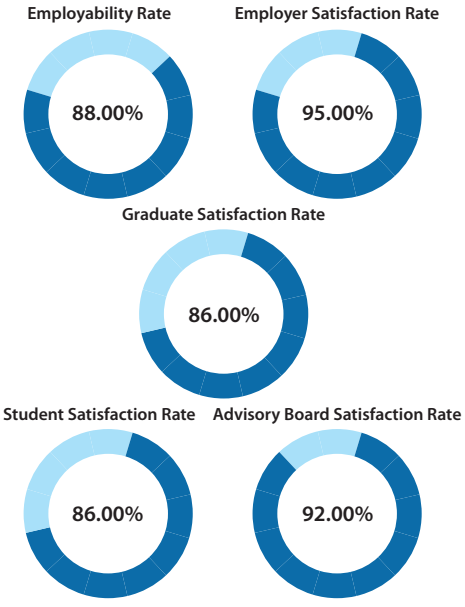
Rated 5 Stars in the QS Rating System

Ranked 30th in the QS Arab Region University Rankings 2026

Ranked 613 in the QS World University Rankings 2026

Ranked 301+ Worldwide in the Times Higher Education University Impact Rankings

General Statistics



Career Paths

1. Financial Analyst
2. Investment Banker
3. Auditor
4. Risk Manager
5. Corporate Treasurer
6. Tax Consultant
7. Financial Controller
8. Equity Research Analyst
9. Compliance Analyst
10. Banking Relationship Manager

Entry Requirements

1. A Secondary School Certificate or equivalent, certified by the Ministry of Education in the Kingdom of Bahrain, with a minimum average of 60% or equivalent.
2. Students with averages below 60% may be admitted provided they meet one of the following criteria:
   - They are athletes or artists who have represented the Kingdom of Bahrain at an international level.
   - They have at least one year of relevant practical experience after obtaining their secondary school certificate.
   - The University Council has granted them approval based on special cases and merit.

   Note: The total number of students admitted under this clause (Point 2) must not exceed 5% of the total admitted students in the programme.
3. Applicants admitted to the programme from a non-scientific secondary school track (or equivalent) must complete remedial courses as determined by the Department.
4. Transfer students are accepted as per the university bachelor degree bylaws.
5. All students admitted to Bachelor in Accounting and Finance programme must complete the Compulsory English Language Test (specified by the University) to determine their English Level.
   - Students who scored between (0-34), must attend Elementary English (ENG097).
   - Students who scored between (35-50), must attend Intermediate English (ENG098).
6. Students are exempted from the courses (ENG097) and (ENG098) if they have obtained 51 or higher in the university's Compulsory English Language Test, Band 5.0 or higher in the IELTS test, or 450 or higher in the TOEFL test.

Study Plan

No.	Course Code	Course Title	Prerequisite	ASU Credit	NQF Credit	NQF Level
Year 1 – First Semester (18 Cr)						
1	ACF101	Principles of Accounting I	-	3	12	5
2	CS104	Computer Skills	-	3	12	5
3	BA108	Principles of Management 1	-	3	12	5
4	MATH102	Business Mathematics	-	3	12	5
5	ENG111	Upper-Intermediate English	-	3	12	5
6	-	University Elective (1)	-	3	12	5
Year 1 – Second Semester (18 Cr)						
1	ENG112	Advanced English	ENG111	3	12	5
2	HR106	Human Rights	-	3	12	5
3	POL110	Introduction to Political Sciences	-	3	12	5
4	ACF151	Financial Management I	ACF101	3	12	6
5	ACF102	Principles of Accounting (II) E	ACF101	3	12	6
6	ECO102	Principles of Microeconomics	-	3	12	6
Year 2 – First Semester (18 Cr)						
1	ARB101	Arabic Language	-	3	12	6
2	STA101	Principles of Statistics	MATH102	3	12	6
3	HBH105	Bahrain Civilization & History	-	3	12	6
4	ACF252	Financial Management (2) E	ACF151	3	12	7
5	ACF203	Intermediate Accounting 1	ACF102	3	12	7
6	-	University Elective (2)	-	3	12	6
Year 2 – Second Semester (18 Cr)						
1	BA218	Principles of Marketing	BA108	3	12	6
2	BA161	Introduction To Entrepreneurship	-	3	12	6
3	ACF280	Corporate & Business Law	ACF151	3	12	6
4	ACF231	Taxation Accounting	ACF102	3	12	6
5	ACF221	Cost Accounting E	ACF101	3	12	6
6	ACF204	Intermediate Accounting 2	ACF203	3	12	7
Year 3 – First Semester (18 Cr)						
1	ECO103	Principles of Macroeconomics	ECO102	3	12	7
2	ACF310	Islamic Banking & Finance	ACF252	3	12	7
3	ACF322	Managerial Accounting E	ACF221	3	12	7
4	BA307	Methods of Scientific Research	STA101	3	12	7
5	ACF305	Advanced Financial Accounting E	ACF204	3	12	7

6	ACF351	Financial Markets & Institutions	ACF252	3	12	7
Year 3 – Second Semester (15 Cr)						
1	ACF353	Investment Management	ACF351	3	12	7
2	ACF360	Auditing & Assurance Services	ACF204	3	12	7
3	ACF370	Data Analytics for Accounting & Finance	ACF221 + ACF252	3	12	7
4	ACF411	Financial Accounting & Reporting for Islamic Institutions	ACF310	3	12	8
5	ACF450	Entrepreneurial Finance	BA161 + ACF351	3	12	8
Year 4 – First Semester (15 Cr)						
1	ACF401	Financial Reporting	ACF305	3	12	8
2	ACF457	Financial Risk Management	ACF353	3	12	8
3	ACF464	Corporate Governance & Professional Ethics	ACF360	3	12	8
4	ACF491	Internship	90 Hrs	3	12	8
5	-	Program Elective (1)	-	3	12	8
Year 4 – Second Semester (15 Cr)						
1	ACF471	Accounting Information Systems	ACF370	3	12	8
2	ACF499	Applied Research in Accounting & Finance Science	BA307	3	12	8
3	ACF456	Financial Analysis & Valuation	ACF305 & ACF353	3	12	8
4	ACF453	Portfolio Management	ACF353	3	12	8
5	-	Program Elective (2)	-	3	12	8

University Elective Courses						
No.	**Course Code**	**Course Title**	**Prerequisite**	**ASU Credit**	**NQF Credit**	**NQF Level**
Group 1 (3 Cr)						
1	ISL101	Islamic Culture	-	3	12	6
2	ISL102	Islamic Ethic	-	3	12	6
3	ISL103	Islam & Contemporary Issues	-	3	12	6
Group 2 (3 Cr)						
1	LIB101	Introduction to Library Science	-	3	12	5
2	MAN101	Man and Environment	-	3	12	5
3	SOC101	Introduction to Sociology	-	3	12	5
4	SPT101	Special Topics	-	3	12	5
5	CS205	Computer Applications	CS104	3	12	5
6	LFS102	Thinking and communication skills development	-	3	12	5

Programme Elective Courses						
No.	**Course Code**	**Course Title**	**Prerequisite**	**ASU Credit**	**NQF Credit**	**NQF Level**
Group 1 (6 Cr)						
1	ACF431	Advanced Taxation	ACF231 + 100 Hrs	3	12	8
2	ACF440	Public Sector Accounting	ACF305	3	12	8
3	ACF470	Quantitative Analysis in Accounting & Finance	ACF370	3	12	8
4	ACF473	Artificial Intelligence Applications in Accounting & Finance	ACF370	3	12	8
5	ACF458	Insurance & Takaful	ACF310	3	12	8
6	ACF465	Internal Audit	ACF360	3	12	8
7	ACF460	Advanced Auditing	ACF360	3	12	8
8	ACF485	Contemporary Issues in Accounting & Finance	ACF305 + ACF353	3	12	8
9	ACF459	International Finance	ACF351	3	12	8

University Compulsory Courses

ARB 101 - Arabic Language

This course deals with issues related to Arabic grammar and literature. It studies some basic linguistic issues in the vocabulary, morphology, syntax, and semantics of Arabic. It also studies stylistic and literary features through analysing and discussing some selected texts from the holy Quran and other literary masterpieces.
(Prerequisite: None)

ENG 101 - English Language (I)

ENG101 is a credit course that runs for one semester of 15 weeks for 3 or 6 hours per week during the summer semester. It is required for students of Law, Political Science, Business Administration, and Art and Design Bachelor Programmes delivered in Arabic. This course is for learners whose achievement in the Oxford Online Placement Test (OOPT) is 41 or higher. The course provides practice in reading, writing, and note-taking at the Intermediate level. It includes academic English, study skills and various reading texts and text types. The course is intended to improve the students' skills in English language to undertake a further English credit course, ENG102, and use English in their studies as needed
(Prerequisite: None)

ENG 102 - English Language (II)

ENG102 is a credit course that runs for one semester of 15 weeks for 3 or 6 hours per week during the summer semester. It is required for students of Law, Political Science, Business Administration, and Art and Design Bachelor Programmes delivered in Arabic. This course is for learners who have completed ENG101. The course provides practice in reading, writing, and note-taking at Upper Intermediate level. It includes academic English, study skills and various reading texts and text types. The course is intended to improve the students' English language skills to undertake various credit courses and use English in their studies as needed.
(Prerequisite: ENG 101)

CS 104 -Computer Skills

This course covers the following topics: basic information technology concepts, using the computer to manage files, word processing, spreadsheets, presentation and database.
(Prerequisite: None)

BA 161 - Introduction to Entrepreneurship

This course aims to study the concept of entrepreneurship, explain its implications and significance, and provide students with the knowledge and skills necessary to transform ideas into applied entrepreneurial projects in accordance with the rules of founding entrepreneurial projects. Moreover, the course aims to provide the students with the core skills of an entrepreneur, starting from establishing the project, choosing the legal formula for it, planning, organising, marketing, and financing until the whole process is fully managed while enabling the students to submit proposals to establish a commercial project and discuss it at the end of the semester. Finally, the course aims to study practical cases for pioneering projects in the Kingdom of Bahrain.
(Prerequisite: None)

HBH 105 - Bahrain Civilization & History

This course deals with the history of Bahrain from 1500-1800. It studies the stages of the Portuguese invasion of this part of the world and the international power struggle that erupted after the invasion. It also deals with the ruling of Al- Utuub Tribe of Bahrain and the reign of Al Khalifa thereafter. (Prerequisite: None)

HR 106 - Human Rights
This course discusses the basic principles of human rights. It acquaints students with the nature of human rights; their realms and sources, paying special attention to the international legal provisions concerning human rights included in the following documents: United Nations Charter, International Declaration of Human Rights, International Accord on Civil and Political Rights, International Accord on Social and Economic Rights, International agreement against torture and inhumane, disrespectful punishment, and Protection mechanisms and constitutional organisation of public rights and freedoms in the Kingdom of Bahrain. (Prerequisite: None)

University Elective Courses

ISL 101 - Islamic Culture
The course deals with the concept of "Culture" in general and the concept of "Islamic Culture" in particular, and other related concepts. Thus, the course studies the characteristics of the Islamic culture, its sources, fields of study, and its role in creating the "Islamic character". It also deals with the so-called "cultural invasion", its types, methodologies, and other related issues. (Prerequisite: None)

ISL 103 - Islam & Contemporary Issues
This course deals with the way Islam deals with contemporary issues such as the phenomenon of fanaticism, determination of the Islamic calendar, alms tax (Zakat) on money and jewellery, democracy and government system, and other scientific and cultural developments.
(Prerequisite: None)

ISL 102 - Islamic Ethics
This course is an Elective University Requirement. It stresses the importance of ethics in Islam and the value Islam gives to ethics in general and work ethics in particular. The course draws general comparisons of the treatment of ethics along different ages in the history of Islam. According to Islam, it offers insights into the possible tools to enhance work ethics. (Prerequisite: None)

SPT 101 - Special Topics
This course is an Elective University Requirement. It deals with special contemporary topics that are important to university students, and the topics dealt with may be economic, social, historical, or political. (Prerequisite: None)

LFS 102 - Thinking and communications skills development
This course is a University Requirement. It introduces the concept of thinking, its characteristics, its forms and its importance in the educational process. The course also deals with applying modern strategies and theories interpreted for different kinds of thinking. The course deals in detail with aspects of communication skills to improve the students' skills in overcoming communicative barriers when communicating in various situations and for various purposes. (Prerequisite: None)

SOC 101 - Introduction to Sociology
The course introduces Sociology; the scientific study of society. Thus, the course stresses social interaction processes and their impact on the members of any society. The course provides the students with knowledge of the main social phenomena and the components of social structure.
(Prerequisite: None)

MAN 101 - Man and Environment
This course deals with issues related to the relationship between human beings and the environment they live in, with special attention to the environment of the students at the University. The course draws the students' attention to the environmental significance and the necessity of regulating our behaviour to avoid harming it.
(Prerequisite- None)

LIB 101 - Introduction to Library Science
This course introduces the library sciences. It gives a general historical review of the development of libraries through the ages and sheds light on the importance of libraries in the development of knowledge and sciences. The course reviews the services the libraries introduce to those who may want to benefit.
(Prerequisite- None)

CS 205 - Computer Applications
This course includes the following topics: using a word processing programme to write reports, using a spreadsheet software programme to create an elementary accounting programme, using a database software programme to design an elementary information system.
(Prerequisite-CS104)

College Compulsory Courses

ACF 101 - Principles of Accounting I

This course concentrates on basic accounting concepts, principles and assumptions, basic accounting equations, the accounting cycle (journalising, posting, preparation of a trial balance, financial statement), adjusting entries, the accounting cycle for a merchandising company, and computing inventory cost under periodic and perpetual inventory systems.
(Prerequisite: None)

BA 108 - Principles of Management I

This course is market structures: pure competition, introductory for studying management and its role in organisations. It introduces the ideas of managerial levels, skills and management concepts, and develops their understanding of how successful employees and managers operate. The course begins with a historical overview of the Management field and the evolution of management thought. Additionally, the course focuses on the management process/ managerial functions such as planning, organising, leading, and controlling.
(Prerequisite: None)

BA 218 – Principles of Marketing

This course provides a broad background to the marketing concept, the role of marketing in an organisation and the external environment. It also introduces some basic and advanced marketing tools. During the course, the student will learn to think like a marketer and understand how marketing managers use marketing elements to enable their business organisation to gain a competitive advantage.
(Prerequisite- BA108)

BA 307 - Methods of Scientific Research

The course studies the scope and significance of business research. It introduces the various aspects of business research, its types, tools and methods and students will learn how to apply business research techniques to real-world situations. The course covers topics such as identifying a topic by the student, proposition of hypothesis, formulation of research inquiries, literature review development, and select research design and methodologies. Additionally, students will learn data collection techniques; primary and secondary data with application to specific problems, scaling and research instrument design and sampling design.
(Prerequisite: STA101)

ECO 102 - Principles of Microeconomics

This course is designed to provide students with detailed knowledge and basic practical skills to apply economic concepts and theories at the consumer and producer levels. The course includes the market systems, demand and supply, market equilibrium, elasticity, consumer behaviour, public goods and externalities, and market structures: pure competition, monopoly, oligopoly, marginal cost, and marginal revenue.
(Prerequisite: None)

ECO 103 - Principles of Macroeconomics

This course is designed to provide students with advanced knowledge and practical skills to apply

economic concepts and theories to real-world problems. The course includes economic growth, inflation and unemployment, money and banking, fiscal and monetary policy, national trade, aggregate demand, aggregate supply, and the market system. (Prerequisite: ECO102)

MATH 102 - Business Mathematics

This cours focuses on business mathematics topics such as set theory, distance formula, line equations, matrices, integration and derivation. During this course, the student will learn the various types of functions and be able to solve and sketch functions. The course will also generally increase the student's ability and mathematics skills.
(Prerequisite: None)

POL110 - Introduction to Political Sciences

The course introduces the basic concepts and ideas of Political Science. It teaches students the relationship between political science and other specialisations and develops their understanding of key concepts such as 'the state', 'government', 'political parties' and 'interest and pressure groups'. The course stresses important topics such as the political system, political socialisation and public opinion, and international relations. It introduces the evolution of the international system, foreign policy and international organisations.
(Prerequisite: None)

STA 101 - Principles of Statistics

Principle of Statistics (STAT 101) is the capstone, integrative course for all students for two colleges (Administrative and Arts and Science). This exciting, challenging course focuses on presenting and describing statistical data related to students' practical life. As well as Principle of Statistics taught inferential statistics as correlation and regression to employ it practically. Students use all the knowledge acquired from prior business courses together with this course. (Prerequisite: MATH102)
Programme Compulsory Courses ACF102 - Principles of Accounting (II) E
This course is designed to provide students with general knowledge and basic practical skills in financial accounting.
The course includes measuring and disclosing cash, receivables, deferrals and accruals, tangible assets, current liabilities, partnerships and corporations, capital formation, and dividends and retained earnings.
(Prerequisite: ACF101)

ACF 151 - Financial Management I
This course is designed to provide students with detailed knowledge and basic practical skills to apply decision-making in a financial context. The course includes an introduction to financial management, financial statement interpretations, time value of money, risk and return, capital budgeting, valuing stocks and bonds, and long-term financing. (Prerequisite: ACF101)

ACF 203 - Intermediate Accounting 1
This course is designed to provide students with advanced knowledge and practical skills to apply the International Accounting and Financial Reporting Standards. The course covers the international accounting standards, international financial reporting standards, a conceptual framework for financial reporting, financial statements, receivables, inventory valuation, property, plant and equipment, natural resources, and intangible assets.
(Prerequisite: ACF102)

ACF 204 - Intermediate Accounting 2
This course is designed to provide students with advanced knowledge and practical skills to apply the conceptual framework of financial accounting and its relevance to the modern business environment. The course covers contingent liabilities, non-current liabilities, stockholder's equity, investments, revenue recognition, accounting for lease, accounting changes and errors, and statement of cash flows.
(Prerequisite: ACF203)

ACF 221 - Cost Accounting E
This course aims at equipping students with detailed knowledge and understanding of cost accounting. The main topics covered are nature, source and purpose of management information, job costing, activity-based costing, process costing, variable and absorption costing, master budget and responsibility accounting, flexible budgets, and standard costing and variance analysis.
(Prerequisite: ACF101)

ACF 231 - Taxation Accounting
This course is designed to provide students with detailed knowledge and understanding and basic practical skills in taxation accounting. This course includes the function and purpose of taxation, the scope of income tax, income from employment and self-employment, property and investment income, computation of taxable income and income tax liability, taxation on capital gains, compliance checks, appeals, disputes, and penalties, value-added tax (VAT) in Bahrain and GCC Region.
(Prerequisite: ACF102)

ACF 252 - Financial Management (2) E
The course is designed to provide students with advanced knowledge and skills in financial management. The course includes the cost of equity, debt and capital, capital structure theories, leverage, dividend policy, working capital management, and long-term financing decision.
(Prerequisite: ACF151)

ACF 280 - Corporate & Business Law
This course is designed to provide students with detailed knowledge and understanding of the general legal framework and specific legal areas relating to business. Topics include elements of the legal system, contract formation, content, breach, remedies, professional negligence, employment law, companies' formation, types, capital financing and maintenance, dividends, management and

administration, insolvency and liquidation, corporate fraudulent and criminal behaviour.
(Prerequisite: ACF151)

ACF 305 - Advanced Financial Accounting E
This course is designed to provide students with advanced knowledge and understanding related to the accounting of intra-entity and inter-entity transactions. The course covers the equity method of accounting for investments, consolidation of financial information, subsequent acquisition date, outside ownership, intra-entity asset transactions, variable interest entities, intra-entity debt, consolidated cash flows, and other issues, foreign currency transactions and financial statements, partnership operations. (Prerequisite: ACF204)

ACF 310 - Islamic Banking & Finance
This course is designed to provide students with advanced knowledge and understanding of Islamic Banking and finance. Topics covered include Islamic finance and banking system foundations, functions, and objectives, regulatory and institutional frameworks, Principles of Islamic Financial Transactions, Types of deposits and investment tools in Islamic banks, Murabaha, Mudaraba, Musharakha, Ijara, Salam, and Istisna'a, Islamic banking services, Governance in Islamic Banks and Finance Institutions.
(Prerequisite: ACF252)

ACF 322 - Managerial Accounting E
This course is designed to provide students with advanced knowledge and skills in applying management accounting techniques for planning, decision making, performance evaluation, and control. The course covers the cost–volume– profit analysis and sales mix, cost estimation and cost behaviour, measuring relevant costs and revenues for decision- making, decision-making under conditions of risk and uncertainty, pricing decision and profitability analysis, divisional financial performance measures, transfer pricing in divisionalised companies, strategic performance management, strategic cost management and value creation, capital budgeting.
(Prerequisite: ACF221)

ACF 351 - Financial Markets & Institutions
This course is designed to provide students with advanced knowledge and advanced-level skills in the financial markets and institutions. The course includes an introduction to financial markets, money market, stock market, bond market, mortgage market, foreign market, exchange rate in the short and long run, and valuation of securities and derivatives markets.
(Prerequisite: ACF252)

ACF 353 - Investment Management
This course is designed to provide students with Advance knowledge and advanced-level skills in Investment Management. This course covers an introduction to investment management and the history of financial markets, securities markets and financial Instruments, portfolio theory, asset allocation, portfolio optimisation, market efficiency hypotheses, Diversification and investment strategies, Principles of asset valuation, Stock valuation, Bond valuation, Convertibles and warrants valuation, Risk management and performance evaluation, Mutual funds and hedge funds, and finally Contemporary issues in investment management.
(Prerequisite: ACF351)

ACF 360 - Auditing & Assurance Services
This course is designed to provide students with advanced knowledge, skills, and professional values in auditing and assurance services. The course covers the audit framework and regulation, audit planning and risk assessment, internal control system, audit evidence, procedures, and sampling, auditing revenue and collection cycle, auditing acquisition and expenditure cycle, auditing production, finance, and investment cycle, subsequent events and going concern, written representation and audit finalisation the auditor's report.
(Prerequisite: ACF204)

ACF 370 - Data Analytics for Accounting & Finance
This course is designed to provide students with advanced knowledge and practical skills in data analytics for accounting and finance aspects. The course includes data preparation, cleaning, modelling, evaluation, and visualisation, audit data analytics, managerial accounting analytics, financial statement analytics, and tax analytics. (Prerequisite: ACF221 + ACF252)

ACF 401 - Financial Reporting
This course is designed to provide students with critical knowledge and specialised skills to apply international accounting and reporting standards. Topics covered include first-time adoption of international financial reporting standards, events after the reporting period, borrowing costs, earnings per share, interim financial reporting, impairment of assets, share-based payment, non-current assets held for sale and discontinued operations, operating segments, revenue from contracts with customers, accounting for government grants and disclosure of government assistance, employee benefits, biological assets.
(Prerequisite: ACF305)

ACF 411- Financial Accounting & Reporting for Islamic Institutions
This course is designed to provide students with Critical knowledge and understanding and specialised skills related to financial accounting and reporting Islamic Institutions. This course includes a conceptual framework for financial reporting in Islamic financial institutions, the latest issues of Islamic Accounting Standards such as Murabaha, Mudarabah, Musharakah, Salam, Istisnaa, Ijarah, Zakah, Investments and General presentation and disclosure in the financial statements of Islamic banks and financial institutions, and Foreign Operations Reporting in Islamic Institutions.
(Prerequisite: ACF310)

ACF 450 - Entrepreneurial Finance
This course is designed to provide students with critical knowledge and understanding and specialised-level skills in entrepreneurial finance. The course includes an introduction to entrepreneurial finance, valuation of entrepreneurial ventures, financing strategies, capitalisation tables, financing decisions, innovative business models using blockchain, analysis of blockchain technologies, and the future of entrepreneurial finance in the kingdom of Bahrain. (Prerequisite: BA161 + ACF 351)

ACF 453 - Portfolio Management
This course is designed to provide students with critical and detailed knowledge that enables them to form, analyse and manage a portfolio. The course contains an introduction to portfolio management, equity portfolio management strategies, portfolio risk and returns measures, Markowitz portfolio

theory, models of capital market: capital asset pricing model (CAPM), arbitrage pricing model (APT), evaluation of portfolio performance, constructing a portfolio, portfolio management and derivatives, portfolio monitoring and rebalancing professional asset management, and bond portfolio management strategies.
(Prerequisite: ACF353)

ACF 456 - Financial Analysis & Valuation
This course is designed to provide students with critical and detailed knowledge that enables them to conduct in-depth financial analyses. The course includes an introduction to financial analysis, financial statements, operating activities, investing activities, financing activities, financial ratios, cash flow analysis, profitability analysis, credit analysis and equity analysis and valuation. (Prerequisite: ACF305 + ACF353)

ACF 457 - Financial Risk Management
This course is designed to provide students with critical knowledge and understanding of financial risk management. The course includes the types of financial risk, managing assets risk, credit portfolio, interest rate, exchange rate, credit, derivatives, operational, cash flow, and budget exposures risks, hedging, the interrelationship between risk and return, managing risks in capital investment decisions, the value of common stock and debt in the capital structure risks, capital asset pricing model and a weighted average cost of capital, and international financial risk management.
(Prerequisite: ACF353)

ACF464 - Corporate Governance & Professional Ethics
This course is designed to cover a range of advanced topics related to governance and professional ethics. Corporate governance objectives, relevance and importance, OECD principles corporate governance, theories underlying corporate governance, corporate governance code of the Kingdom of Bahrain, and board of directors: structure, roles and responsibility, board of director's committees, corporate social responsibility, accounting ethics and professional conduct: principles, rules, and threats, ethics applied to accounting firms, and ethics applied to tax and managerial accounting.
(Prerequisite: ACF360)

ACF 471 - Accounting Information Systems
This course is designed to cover a group of critical knowledge and specialised skills in accounting information systems. Topics covered include accounting information system components, development, and documentation, relational databases, fraud, computer misuse and cybercrime, systems security and protection, and business cycles. (Prerequisite: ACF370)

ACF 491 - Internship
The internship is a pre-arranged, credit-bearing work experience that allows a student to achieve personal goals aligned with the goals of a supervising professional organisation or agency. Internships provide opportunities to explore career options, test career choices, and encourage the development of skills within a chosen field. An internship allows students to relate theory with practical job experience and develop new skills that will be transferable to future employers.
(Prerequisite: 90 Credit Hours)

ACF 499 - Applied Research in Accounting & Finance Science
In this course, students critically apply appropriate research methodologies to conduct applied research

with a comprehensive research report. Typically, the research undertaken will be oriented to real-life business problems or situations selected by the student and validated by the tutor. This allows the individual student to take the responsibility of executing applied research with guidance from a supervisor. The student will use knowledge and skills gained in earlier studied courses and implement them in the research. Students will be required to plan their work and meet deadlines, and they also need to demonstrate the outcome of the investigation and write a comprehensive report. (Prerequisite: BA307)

Programme Elective Courses

ACF 431 – Advanced Taxation

This course is designed to provide students with critical knowledge and understanding of advanced taxation. This course covers the comparative tax systems internationally, national insurance contribution of taxable income and income tax liability, taxation for corporate group structure, the effect of tax at a business level, advanced taxation issues in capital gains and inheritance, tax planning, avoidance and minimisation, tax fraud and penalties for non-compliance, tax havens, double taxation, and sustainability.
(Prerequisite: ACF231 + 100 credit hours)

ACF 440 - Public Sector Accounting

This course is designed to provide students with critical knowledge and understanding of public sector accounting, particularly concerning the Kingdom of Bahrain. Topics covered include public sector accounting: Nature and characteristics, budgeting: accounting and reporting, state budget and final accounts: Kingdom of Bahrain, accounting for governmental operating activities, capital assets and capital projects, general long-term liabilities and debt service, business-type activities, fiduciary activities - agency and trust funds, Analysis of Governmental Financial, performance budgeting and performance measurement and international public sector accounting standards (IPSAS).
(Prerequisite: ACF305)

ACF 458 - Insurance & Takaful

This course is designed to provide students with critical knowledge and understanding of insurance and takaful. The course includes the risk types, causes, and elements, conventional insurance: pillars, types of contracts, their effects and expiration, technical and legal principles of insurance, the concept of takaful, the differences between takaful and commercial insurance, takaful companies, takaful and conventional reinsurance, Sharia standard related to insurance. (Prerequisite: ACF310)

ACF 459 - International Finance

This course is designed to provide students with critical knowledge and understanding and specialised-level skills in international finance. This course covers the following subjects: understanding of finance in the international context, the historical perspectives and foundations of international finance, opportunities and risks associated with international finance, international financial markets, financial operations of multinational corporations within the international environment, management of currency risk within the foreign exchange markets and exchange rate determination, the political risk of multinational companies, financial globalisation and international financial crises transmission, developments in the world of finance and their implications for business strategies, and contemporary issues in international finance. (Prerequisite: ACF351)

ACF 460 - Advanced Auditing
This course is designed to provide students with critical knowledge to analyse, evaluate and conclude on the audit and assurance engagements and issues in the context of best practice and current developments. Topics include money laundering, laws and regulations compliance: the responsibilities of management and auditors, code of ethics and control, fraud and error, professional liability, quality control and practice management, auditing historical financial statements, analytical procedures, group audit, audit-related and assurance services, specifics assignments, social, environmental, and integrated reporting.
(Prerequisite: ACF360)

ACF 465 - Internal Audit
This course is designed to cover a range of advanced topics related to internal audits. The course covered: the introduction to internal audit, the international professional practices framework, risk management, the business processes and risks, internal control, Information technology risks and control, risk of fraud and illegal acts, audit evidence and working papers, audit planning and engagement, and communicating outcomes and follow up procedures.
(Prerequisite: ACF360)

ACF 470 - Quantitative Analysis in Accounting & Finance
This course is designed to provide students with critical knowledge and specialised skills in utilising statistical and quantitative analyses of issues in finance and accounting. Students will get exposure to a number of quantitative models proven to be effectively applicable to accounting and financial management problems, including decision trees, linear programming, inventory control, time series analysis, forecasting, volatility models, panel data models and networking models.
(Prerequisite: ACF370)

ACF 473 - Artificial Intelligence Applications in Accounting & Finance
This course is designed to provide students with critical knowledge and practical skills to utilise Artificial Intelligence approaches and applications to accounting and finance data. Topics covered an introduction to business and finance, big data analysis and infrastructure, extracting intelligence from big data, artificial intelligence and machine learning, business applications of machine learning, machine learning applications in accounting and finance, artificial intelligence simulation, risk, governance, and driven business.
(Prerequisite: ACF370)

ACF 485 - Contemporary Issues in Accounting & Finance
This course is designed to provide students with specialised skills and detailed knowledge of contemporary issues in accounting and finance. This course will cover emerging topics in accounting and finance that will vary as conditions change.
(Prerequisite: ACF305 + ACF353)

Bachelor in Management Information Systems

ASU
جامعة العلوم التطبيقية
APPLIED SCIENCE UNIVERSITY

Programme Coordinator
Dr. Hasan Alhanatleh
Office Number:
+973 16036347
Email:
Hasan.Alhanatleh@asu.edu.bh

Head of Department
Dr. Ahmad Shatat
Office Number:
+973 16036235
Email:
ahmad.shatat@asu.edu.bh

Apply Now | Enquiry | Study Plan

Programme Details

Final Qualification	Language of Study	Mode of Study
Bachelor Degree	English	Full Time

Programme Structure

Study Period	Total Credit Hours	Number of Courses
4 Years	135 Credit Hours	45 Courses

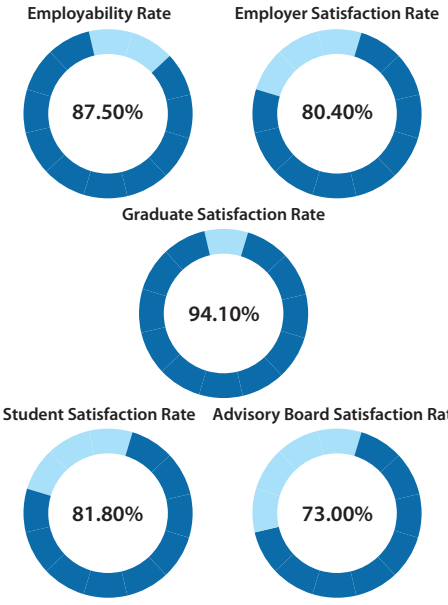
Brief about the Programme

Join the Bachelor in Management Information Systems programme to bridge business and technology with confidence. You will develop strong skills in systems analysis, data management, IT project implementation, and business process improvement. The curriculum combines theory with practical experience, supported by industry partnerships, modern tools, and real-world projects. Graduates are in demand for roles such as business analysts, systems specialists, or IT consultants across multiple sectors.

Aims of the Programme

1. Provide graduates with advanced knowledge in management information systems and the implementation and management of information systems within a modern digital business setting.
2. Develop graduates' digital skills to critically analyse business processes and implement relevant IT solutions
3. that are required for a professional career in the management information systems.
4. Enable students to review information systems comprehensively and understand enterprise systems.
5. Equip students to manage diverse information system resources.
6. Equip graduates with technical, analytical, interpersonal, communication, ethical, and lifelong learning skills to enable them to contribute ethically and in a socially responsible manner both in their professional role and in society at large.

General Statistics



The first university in the Kingdom of Bahrain to achieve global accreditation from the British Quality Assurance Agency for Higher Education (QAA)

Rated 5 Stars in the QS Rating System

Ranked 30th in the QS Arab Region University Rankings 2026

Ranked 613 in the QS World University Rankings 2026

Ranked 301+ Worldwide in the Times Higher Education University Impact Rankings

Career Paths

1. Business Analyst
2. IT Consultant
3. ERP Specialist
4. Systems Analyst
5. Database Manager
6. IT Project Manager
7. E-Business Manager
8. Data Analyst

Entry Requirements

1. A Secondary School Certificate or equivalent, certified by the Ministry of Education in the Kingdom of Bahrain, with a minimum average of 60% or equivalent.
2. Students with averages below 60% may be admitted provided they meet one of the following criteria:
   - They are athletes or artists who have represented the Kingdom of Bahrain at an international level.
   - They have at least one year of relevant practical experience after obtaining their secondary school certificate.
   - The University Council has granted them approval based on special cases and merit.

Note: The total number of students admitted under this clause (Point 2) must not exceed 5% of the total admitted students in the programme.

3. Applicants admitted to the programme from a non-scientific secondary school track (or equivalent) must complete remedial courses as determined by the MIS Department.
4. Transfer students are accepted as per the university bachelor degree bylaws.
5. All students admitted to Bachelor in Accounting and Finance programme must complete the Compulsory English Language Test (specified by the University) to determine their English Level.
   - Students who scored between (0-34), must attend Elementary English (ENG097).
   - Students who scored between (35-50), must attend Intermediate English (ENG098).
6. Students are exempted from the courses (ENG097) and (ENG098) if they have obtained 51 or higher in the university's Compulsory English Language Test, Band 5.0 or higher in the IELTS test, or 450 or higher in the TOEFL test.

Study Plan

No.	Course Code	Course Title	Prerequisite	ASU Credit	NQF Credit	NQF Level
Year 1 – First Semester (18 Cr)						
1	CS104	Computer Skills	-	3	12	5
2	BA108	Principles of Management (1)	-	3	12	5
3	MATH102	Business Mathematics	-	3	12	5
4	ACF101	Principles of Accounting (1)	-	3	12	5
5	POL110	Introduction to Political Sciences	-	3	12	5
6	ENG111	Upper-Intermediate English	-	3	12	5
Year 1 – Second Semester (18 Cr)						
1	ENG112	Advanced English	ENG111	3	12	5
2	HR106	Human Rights	-	3	12	5
3	-	University Elective (1)	-	3	12	5
4	MIS211	Management Information Systems	BA108+CS104	3	12	6
5	ARB101	Arabic Language	-	3	12	6
6	ECO102	Principles of Microeconomics	-	3	12	6
Year 2 – First Semester (18 Cr)						
1	BA109	Principles of Management (2) E	BA108	3	12	6
2	STA101	Principles of Statistics	MATH102	3	12	6
3	HBH105	Bahrain Civilization & History	-	3	12	6
4	BA218	Principles of Marketing	BA108	3	12	6
5	MIS231	Programming and Data Structure	MIS211	3	12	6
6	MIS240	Information Systems Infrastructure	MIS211	3	12	6
Year 2 – Second Semester (18 Cr)						
1	-	University Elective (2)	-	3	12	6
2	BA161	Introduction To Entrepreneurship	-	3	12	6
3	ACF151	Financial Management (1)	ACF101	3	12	6
4	MIS251	Information Resources Management	MIS240	3	12	7
5	MIS321	Information Systems Analysis	MIS240	3	12	7
6	ECO103	Principles of Macroeconomics	ECO102	3	12	7
Year 3 – First Semester (18 Cr)						
1	BA238	Human Resources Management E	BA109	3	12	7
2	MIS312	E-Decision Support Systems	MIS251	3	12	7
3	BA307	Methods of Scientific Research	STA101	3	12	7
4	MIS344	Introduction to Database Systems	MIS321	3	12	7
5	MIS436	Web Application Development	MIS231	3	12	7

6	-	Programme Elective (1)	-	3	12	7
Year 3 – Second Semester (18 Cr)						
1	-	Programme Elective (2)	-	3	12	7
2	BA349	Operations Management E	BA109	3	12	7
3	MIS332	Visual Programming	MIS231	3	12	7
4	MIS255	Knowledge Base Management	MIS312	3	12	8
5	MIS465	Business Intelligence	MIS312	3	12	8
6	MIS314	Integrated Information Systems	MIS251	3	12	8
Year 4 – First Semester (15 Cr)						
1	MIS343	Information Systems Security	MIS314	3	12	8
2	MIS361	E-Business	MIS255	3	12	8
3	MIS456	Information Systems Project Management	MIS314	3	12	8
4	MIS445	Mobile Computing	MIS436	3	12	8
5	MIS462	Internship	90 Credit Hours	3	12	8
Year 4 – Second Semester (12 Cr)						
1	MIS422	Information Systems Design and Implementation	MIS321+MIS344	3	12	8
2	MIS464	Applied Research in MIS	BA307+MIS462	3	12	8
3	MIS363	Special Topics in Information Systems	MIS465	3	12	8
4	MIS454	MIS Ethics	MIS343	3	12	8

University Elective Courses						
No.	**Course Code**	**Course Title**	**Prerequisite**	**ASU Credit**	**NQF Credit**	**NQF Level**
Group 1 (3 Cr)						
1	ISL101	Islamic Culture	-	3	12	6
2	ISL102	Islamic Ethic	-	3	12	6
3	ISL103	Islam & Contemporary Issues	-	3	12	6
Group 2 (3 Cr)						
1	LIB101	Introduction to Library Science	-	3	12	5
2	MAN101	Man and Environment	-	3	12	5
3	SOC101	Introduction to Sociology	-	3	12	5
4	SPT101	Special Topics	-	3	12	5
5	CS205	Computer Applications	CS104	3	12	5
6	LFS102	Thinking and communication skills development	-	3	12	5

Programme Elective Courses						
No.	**Course Code**	**Course Title**	**Prerequisite**	**ASU Credit**	**NQF Credit**	**NQF Level**
Group 1 (6 Cr)						
1	MIS356	Information Systems Auditing	MIS251	3	12	7
2	MIS210	Financial Information Systems	ACF151 + MIS211	3	12	7
3	BA241	Quantitative Methods in Management E	STA101	3	12	7
4	BA332	Business Communication	BA109 + ENG111	3	12	7

University Compulsory Courses

ARB 101 - Arabic Language

This course deals with issues related to Arabic grammar and literature. It studies some basic linguistic issues in the vocabulary, morphology, syntax, and semantics of Arabic. It also studies stylistic and literary features through analysing and discussing some selected texts from the holy Quran and other literary masterpieces.
(Prerequisite: None)

ENG101 - English Language (I)

ENG101 is a credit course that runs for one semester of 15 weeks for 3 or 6 hours per week during the summer semester. It is required for students of Law, Political Science, Business Administration, and Art and Design Bachelor Programmes delivered in Arabic. This course is for learners whose achievement in the Oxford Online Placement Test (OOPT) is 41 or higher. The course provides practice in reading, writing, and note-taking at the Intermediate level. It includes academic English, study skills and various reading texts and text types. The course is intended to improve students' English language skills to undertake a further English credit course, ENG102, and use English in their studies as needed.
(Prerequisite: None)

ENG102 - English Language (II)

per week during the summer semester. It is required for students of Law, Political Science, Business Administration, and Art and Design Bachelor Programmes delivered in Arabic. This course is for learners who have completed ENG101. The course provides practice in reading, writing, and note-taking at the upper-intermediate level. It includes academic English, study skills and various reading texts and text types. The course is intended to improve students' English language skills to undertake various credit courses and use English in their studies as needed.
(Prerequisite: ENG101)

CS104 - Computer Skills

This course covers the following topics: basic information technology concepts, using the computer to manage files, word processing, spreadsheets, presentation and database.
(Prerequisite: None)

BA161 - Introduction to Entrepreneurship

This course aims to study the concept of entrepreneurship, explain its implications and significance, and provide students with the knowledge and skills necessary to transform ideas into applied entrepreneurial projects in accordance with the rules of founding entrepreneurial projects. Moreover, the course aims to provide students with the core skills of an entrepreneur, starting from establishing the project, choosing the legal formula for it, planning, organising, marketing, and financing until the whole process is fully managed while enabling students to submit proposals to establish a commercial project and discuss it at the end of the semester. Finally, the course aims to study practical cases for pioneering projects in the Kingdom of Bahrain.
(Prerequisite: None)

HBH105 - Bahrain Civilization & History
This course deals with the history of Bahrain from 1500-1800. It studies the stages of the Portuguese invasion of this part of the world and the international power struggle that erupted after the invasion. It also deals with the ruling of Al- Utuub Tribe of Bahrain and the reign of Al Khalifa thereafter.
(Prerequisite: None)

HR106 - Human Rights
This course discusses the basic principles of human rights. It acquaints students with the nature of human rights; their realms and sources, paying special attention to the international legal provisions concerning human rights included in the following documents: United Nations Charter, International Declaration of Human Rights, International Accord on Civil and Political Rights, International Accord on Social and Economic Rights, International agreement against torture and inhumane, disrespectful punishment, and Protection mechanisms and constitutional organisation of public rights and freedoms in the Kingdom of Bahrain. (Prerequisite: None)

University Elective Courses

ISL101 - Islamic Culture
The course deals with the concept of "Culture" in general and the concept of "Islamic Culture" in particular, and other related concepts. Thus, the course studies the characteristics of the Islamic culture, its sources, fields of study, and its role in creating the "Islamic character". It also deals with the so-called "cultural invasion", its types, methodologies, and other related issues.
(Prerequisite: None)

ISL103 - Islam & Contemporary Issues
This course deals with the way Islam deals with contemporary issues such as the phenomenon of fanaticism, determination of the Islamic calendar, alms tax (Zakat) on money and jewellery, democracy and government system, and other scientific and cultural developments.
(Prerequisite: None)

ISL102 - Islamic Ethics
This course is an Elective University Requirement. It stresses the importance of ethics in Islam and the value Islam gives to ethics in general and work ethics in particular. The course draws general comparisons of the treatment of ethics along different ages in the history of Islam. According to Islam, it offers insights into the possible tools to enhance work ethics. (Prerequisite: None)

SPT101 - Special Topics
This course is an Elective University Requirement. It deals with special contemporary topics that are important to University students, and the topics dealt with may be economic, social, historical, or political.
(Prerequisite: None)

LFS102 - Thinking and Communications Skills Development
This course is a University Requirement. It introduces the concept of thinking, its characteristics, its forms and its importance in the educational process. The course also deals with applying modern

strategies and theories interpreted for different kinds of thinking. The course deals in detail with aspects of communication skills to improve students' skills in overcoming communicative barriers when communicating in various situations and for various purposes. (Prerequisite: None)

SOC101 - Introduction to Sociology
The course introduces Sociology; the scientific study of society. Thus, the course stresses social interaction processes and their impact on the members of any society. The course provides students with the knowledge of the main social phenomena and components of social structure.
(Prerequisite: None)

MAN101 - Man and Environment
This course deals with issues related to the relationship between human beings and the environment they live in, with special attention to the environment of students at the University. The course draws students' attention to the environmental significance and the necessity of regulating our behaviour to avoid harming it. (Prerequisite: None)

LIB101 - Introduction to Library Science
This course introduces the library sciences. It gives a general historical review of the development of libraries through the ages and sheds light on the importance of libraries in the development of knowledge and sciences. The course reviews the services the libraries introduce to those who may want to benefit.

CS205 - Computer Applications
This course includes the following topics: using a word processing programme to write reports, using a spreadsheet software programme to create an elementary accounting programme, using a database software programme to design an elementary information system.
(Prerequisite: CS104)

Programme Compulsory Courses

BA109 - Principles of Management (2) (E)
The course exposes students to the basic concepts of the organisation, its characteristics and legal forms. It provides a comprehensive understanding of the organisation's functions (production, marketing, finance, human resource, knowledge and information and management). Additionally, it covers the organisation's relationship with the surrounding environment.
(Prerequisite: BA108)

ACF151 - Financial Management (1)
This course will introduce students to the concepts and tools of financial management. The focus of the course is decision-making in a financial context. Therefore, it examines the techniques used in businesses to make decisions that are consistent with the efforts to increase the wealth of the business owners in a corporate environment. The topics covered include but are not limited to financial analysis, the time value of money, capital budgeting, risk and return, valuation of future cash flows, valuation of stocks and bonds, and long-term financing.
(Prerequisite: ACF101)

MIS 211 - Management Information Systems
This course presents computer-based solutions to problems encountered in the business environment. It focuses on systems, information systems concepts and technologies. Students will learn the most effective ways to use information systems to achieve competitive advantages for the business. Topics include information systems types, computer and IT applications, gaining a competitive advantage with IT information systems key resources, integrating collaborating environments, E-Commerce, Decision Support Systems, enterprise resource planning, customer relationship management, supply chain management, databases and data warehouses.
(Prerequisite: BA108 + CS104)

MIS231 - Programming and Data Structure
This course introduces the concepts of structured programming together with programming tools. It also introduces them to Data Structures types, the primitive operations associated with each type, and C++ implementation for some of the primitive operations. Topics to be covered in this course are Algorithms, C++ Programming language tools (Input Output, Selection, Repetition, Methods and Matrices), and Data structures types (Linked list, Stacks, Queues and trees). (Prerequisite: MIS211)

BA238 - Human Resources Management (E)
This introductory Human Resource Management course (HRM) is designed to introduce students to detailed knowledge and understanding associated with the field. The course covers the main theories, principles and concepts associated with HMR. The course also exposes students to the major challenges and problems encountered in the HRM environment. It introduces them to the tools, techniques and practices used by HRM professionals to deal with problems and issues encountered in the workplace, some of which may be undefined.
(Prerequisite: BA109)

MIS240 - Information Systems Infrastructures
This course engages students in an advanced study of the Information technology infrastructure required to build and implement information systems. Topics related to operating systems (structure, functionality, types, and security), Computer Networks (Components, Protocols, and Applications), the key features of Cloud computing, and Data centres are covered in this course.
(Prerequisite: MIS211)

MIS251 - Information Resources Management
The course aims to extend students' detailed knowledge of the business environment by introducing students to how information resources are managed in a business environment. The material covered in this course includes the impact of IT on business, T strategy, IT governance, IT processes, IT planning, and the role of the CIO within the organisation. (Prerequisite: MIS240)

MIS312 - E- Decision Support Systems
This course explores the core concepts of decision support systems and investigates the fundamental techniques associated with them to ensure they can effectively support the decision-making process. It also develops an understanding of the methodologies, technologies, and modelling used in Decision Support Systems and Business Intelligence.
(Prerequisite: MIS251)

MIS314 - Integrated Information Systems
The course provides a comprehensive review of enterprise systems, focusing on integrated business processes with enterprise resource planning (ERP) systems. It provides detailed coverage of enterprise systems architecture, data in enterprise systems, and ERP application platforms. This course also covers the key business processes supported by modern ERP systems.
(Prerequisite: MIS251)

MIS321 - Information Systems Analysis
This course provides students with advanced knowledge and understanding of the concepts and practice of information systems analysis. Students will gain skills in Information Systems requirements analysis and logical system specifications. The student will also learn several systematic approaches and tools for the analysis process management and techniques that will enable them to analyse systems in a team environment.
(Prerequisite: MIS240)

MIS332 - Visual Programming
This course introduces the concepts of Visual Basic (VB) Programming, its tools, its elements and its usage in problem- solving. The student will learn to design, write and implement a programme with the VB programming language. The topics covered in this course are the user interface with its tools (dialogue boxes, text boxes, buttons, list boxes, combo boxes, radio buttons, checkboxes, etc.), loops, selections statement, and timers. The student will also learn to use VB tools to do animation, create a web browser, and connect a basic visual programme with a database.
(Prerequisite: MIS231)

MIS344 - Introduction to Database Systems
This course develops students' knowledge and understanding of database systems. It extends students understanding of approaches to maintenance and manipulation of files by introducing and explaining database systems concepts, database systems evolution, and database types. The entity, attributes, relational database, database architecture, database modelling methods, data definition, and database manipulation languages such as SQL are comprehensively explained.
(Prerequisite: MIS321)

MIS343 - Information Systems Security
This course covers the key principles and practices related to information systems security. The course comprehensively covers information security concepts, attacking techniques, security policies, cryptographic tools, authentication systems, access control, and types of malicious software. In addition, the course examines legal and ethical issues related to information systems security.
(Prerequisite: MIS314)

BA349 - Operations Management (E)
The course provides students with advanced knowledge and skills necessary to transform inputs (materials, labour, capital and management) into outputs (products or services) that explores a firm's value propositions and complies with its business strategy. Topics include location, product selection and design, capacity planning, process selection, facilities location and design, Scheduling, Aggregate Production Planning, Material Requirements Planning (MRP), and Modern Manufacturing Systems and Future Plant. The course contributes to students' development as autonomous and responsible professionals in the business environment.
(Prerequisite: BA109)

MIS 255 – Knowledge Based Management
This course introduces the concepts of Knowledge management and forces driving knowledge management Systems. Students will learn about the issues in knowledge management, knowledge types, knowledge generation, knowledge transfer, knowledge management solutions, knowledge management technologies and the infrastructure of knowledge management systems. Also, this course will acquaint students with the applications of knowledge management systems.
(Prerequisite: MIS312)

MIS361 - E-Business
This course provides students with advanced knowledge of technological concepts, economic effects, and structural constitution for electronic business systems such as B2B, B2C, C2C, G2B and any other emerging technology. Enterprise systems solutions, paying techniques, information security issues,

client relations, and social and legal issues will also be covered. The course focuses on how business is carried out electronically through various digital platforms. (Prerequisite: MIS255)

MIS363 - Special Topics in Information Systems
This course aims to provide students with detailed knowledge of selected topics in information systems that reflect emerging trends or areas of interest in information systems which are not covered in-depth in other courses in the Bachelor Degree of Management Information Systems (MIS). The course currently examines developments and research in the following topics - Social Media, Internet of Things, Cloud Computing and Big Data. The course thus gives students knowledge of new and emerging topics using new and innovative information system technologies, management approaches, integration issues, and relevant contemporary issues which impact MIS. The course covers areas of knowledge which are of professional interest for information systems practitioners and managers. The contents of the course will be revised periodically (subject to relevant approvals from the College and the University) to incorporate other topics or research that are likely to significantly impact information systems development and use. (Prerequisite: MIS 465)

MIS422 - Information Systems Design & Implementation
This course provides students with advanced knowledge and understanding of Information Systems development review, converting new system specifications to design, designing effective output, designing effective input, database design, designing an effective user interface, designing accurate data entry procedures, design documentation, coding, testing, and getting user approval, user training and system implementation.
(Prerequisite: MIS321 + MIS344)

MIS436 - Web Applications Development
This course covers the concepts required to demonstrate critical knowledge of programming web application servers. The student will gain advanced knowledge of the fundamental architectural elements of programming websites that produce content dynamically. The primary development tools introduced will be HTML, JavaScript and PHP. Nevertheless the course will also cover related topics dealing with content development as necessary so that students may build significant applications.
(Prerequisite: MIS231)

MIS445 - Mobile Computing
This course comprehensively covers all aspects of mobile computing and its platforms, wireless networks, architectures, security and management, and mobile computing applications such as mobile messaging, mobile agents, and sensor applications. It deals with the fundamentals of mobile technology. It progressively builds on these to consider more complex topics, including network and wireless communication, mobile computing applications, platforms and middleware, wireless LANs and PANs, wireless security, wireless positioning, and wireless management and support. (Prerequisite: MIS436)

MIS454 - MIS Ethics
This course aims to provide students with a solid grounding in the principles and concepts which underpin a study of ethics and give them in-depth knowledge of how ethical concepts and actions impact the Information Systems Management field. The course focuses on the fundamental concepts

of ethics, ethical standards of information systems, professionals and users of information systems, and ethical issues related to privacy and digital crimes.
(Prerequisite: MIS343)

MIS456 - Information Systems Project Management
This course discusses the processes, methods, techniques and tools organisations use to manage their information systems projects. The course covers a systematic methodology for initiating, planning, executing, controlling, and closing projects. This course assumes that project management in the modern organisation is a complex team-based activity, where various types of technologies, including project management software and software to support group collaboration, are an inherent part of the project management process. This course also acknowledges that project management involves using resources within the organisation and others acquired from outside the organisation. (Prerequisite: BA314)

MIS462 - Internship
The internship is a pre-arranged, credit-bearing work experience which allows a student to achieve personal goals aligned with the goals of a supervising professional organisation or agency. Internships provide opportunities to explore career options, test career choices, and encourage the development of skills within a chosen field. An internship allows students to relate theory with practical job experience and develop new skills that will be transferable to future employers.
(Prerequisite: 90 Credit Hours)

MIS464 - Applied Research in MIS
In this course, students critically apply appropriate research methodologies to develop either a software application with an accompanying research report or a comprehensive research report based on another valid research project selected by the student and validated by the tutor. Typically, the research project will be oriented to real-life business problems or situations. This allows an individual student to take the responsibility of executing applied research with guidance from a supervisor. The student will use knowledge and skills gained in earlier studied courses and implement them in the research. Students will be required to plan their work and meet deadlines. They also need to demonstrate the outcome of the investigation and write a comprehensive report.(Prerequisite: BA307 + MIS462)

MIS465 - Business Intelligence
This course introduces the concepts of Business Intelligence (BI) and its capabilities, including organisational memory capabilities, integration capabilities, presentation capabilities and Business Intelligence tools and techniques. The material in this course covers the various aspects of BI, including the business impacts, technologies, management and development of BI.
(Prerequisite: MIS312)

Programme Elective Courses:

MIS356 - Information Systems Auditing
This course introduces the fundamental concepts of the information systems audit and control function. The main focus of this course is to understand audit controls, the types of controls and their impact on the organisation's performance. The concepts and techniques used in information

technology and systems audits will be presented. Students will learn audit management; dealing with best practices, standards, regulatory requirements, governing information and controls is addressed.
(Prerequisite: MIS251)

MIS 210 - Financial Information Systems
Financial Information Systems is concerned with how computerised information systems impact financial data capturing, processing, and communication. This course introduces the components of financial information systems, i.e. people, technology, procedures, and controls necessary to conduct internal and external e-business, emphasising the internal controls over such systems. This course presents problems in the financial environment with their computer-based solution. It focuses on the concepts of information systems and technology applied in a business context and also examines the importance of financial information systems in detecting and preventing fraud. Students will learn the most effective ways to use information systems in the financial environment. Students will understand the importance of implementing effective financial information systems in a business context.
(Prerequisite: ACF151 + MIS211)

BA241 - Quantitative Methods in Management (E)
This course provides an introduction to the concept, theories and principles associated with and application of quantitative methods in Management. It develops the mathematical and statistical competence necessary to facilitate progression in areas such as Operation Management necessary for decision making. The course builds on concepts and analytical techniques taught in STA 101 Principles of Statistics, developing more advanced quantitative methods, such as Linear Programming and Sensitivity and Duality Theory. Quantitative methods are used throughout the economy's business, government and non-profit sectors. At a minimum, effective participation in decision-making must be able to understand and interpret statistical reports.
(Prerequisite: STA101)

BA332 - Business Communication
The course introduces the concepts of written and oral business communications. This course focuses on the importance of the communication process, its objectives and types. It enables students to achieve competencies in business writing, including good and bad news business letters, memoranda, electronic mail, persuasive messages, formal letters, and formal reports. The course promotes students' capacity to use electronic communication and technology appropriate to contemporary business functions. Additionally, it paves the way for students' personal development as professionals in the business world.
(Prerequisite: BA109 + ENG 111)

LSBU London South Bank University
EST 1892

ASU جامعة العلوم التطبيقية
APPLIED SCIENCE UNIVERSITY

College of Arts and Science

Bachelor in Computer Science

Programme Coordinator:
Dr. Oualid Ali

Office Number:
+973 16036143

Email:
oualid.ali@asu.edu.bh

Head of Department:
Dr. Oualid Ali

Office Number:
+973 16036143

Email:
oualid.ali@asu.edu.bh

Apply Now | Enquiry | Study Plan

Programme Details

Final Qualification	Language of Study	Mode of Study
Bachelor Degree	English	Full Time

Programme Structure

Study Period	Total Credit Hours	Number of Courses
4 Years	135 Credit Hours	45 Courses

Brief about the Programme

Meet the rising demand for IT experts with our Computer Science programme, offering three specialized tracks: General Computer Science, Artificial Intelligence, and Cyber Security. Combining strong theoretical foundations with practical, hands-on training, students master programming, algorithms, networks, AI, and cybersecurity through team-based experiential learning. The curriculum, which is aligned with global standards such as ABET and ACM/IEEE-CS, is regularly updated to keep pace with industry trends. Accredited by Bahrain's BQA and integrated into the National Qualifications Framework, the programme enhances students' critical thinking and research skills, preparing them to excel in dynamic IT careers locally, regionally, and internationally.

Aims of the Programme

1. Graduates will be equipped with technical skills as per the needs of the local and regional labour market.
2. Graduates will master various computer related knowledge and competencies to solve work problems and generate new ideas with creativity and innovation.
3. Graduates will be able to apply scientific research methodologies to analyse and interpret computer science results and data.
4. Graduates will engage in collaborative and effective teamwork.
5. Graduates will demonstrate a humanistic and ethical commitment to their community, respecting occupational and cultural diversity while promoting awareness critical for achieving sustainable development.

The first university in the Kingdom of Bahrain to achieve global accreditation from the British Quality Assurance Agency for Higher Education (QAA)

Rated 5 Stars in the QS Rating System

Ranked 30th in the QS Arab Region University Rankings 2026

Ranked 613 in the QS World University Rankings 2026

Ranked 301+ Worldwide in the Times Higher Education University Impact Rankings

Career Paths

1. Software Developer
2. Data Scientist
3. Cybersecurity Analyst
4. Systems Engineer
5. AI/ML Specialist
6. Cloud Solutions Architect
7. Database Administrator
8. Web Developer
9. Mobile App Developer
10. IT Project Manager

Entry Requirements

1. A Secondary School Certificate or equivalent, certified by the Ministry of Education in the Kingdom of Bahrain, with a minimum average of 60% or equivalent.
2. Students with averages below 60% may be admitted provided they meet one of the following criteria:

They are from the talented category (such as athletes, entrepreneurs, inventors, authors) and artists who represent the Kingdom of Bahrain internationally.

- They have at least one year of relevant practical experience after obtaining their secondary school certificate.
- The University Council has granted admission for an applicant with an average below 60%.

Note: The total number of students admitted under this clause (Point 2) must not exceed 20% of the admitted students.

3. Admission to the Computer Science Programme is limited to students who have obtained a High School Certificate - 'Scientific Track' or its equivalent.
4. Transfer students are accepted as per the university bachelor degree bylaws.
5. All students admitted to Computer Science programme with its three tracks must complete the Compulsory English Language Test (specified by the University) to determine their English Level.
   - Students who scored between (0-34), must attend Elementary English (ENG097).
   - Students who scored between (35-50), must attend Intermediate English (ENG098).
6. Students are exempted from the courses (ENG097) and (ENG098) if they have obtained 51 or higher in the university's Compulsory English Language Test, Band 5.0 or higher in the IELTS test, or 450 or higher in the TOEFL test.

Study Plan

Programme Study Plan								
No.	Course Code	Course Title	Prerequisite	Lec	Lab	ASU Credit	NQF Credit	NQF Level
Year 1 – First Semester (15 Cr)								
1	ENG 111	Upper-Intermediate English	Oxford test score > 50 /ENG 098	3	0	3	12	5
2	CS 104	Computer Skills	-	2	2	3	12	5
3	CSC 101	Mathematics 1	-	2	2	3	12	6
4	CSC 111	Structured Programming	-	2	2	3	12	6
5	CSC 103	Probability and Statistics	-	2	2	3	12	6
Year 1 – Second Semester (18 Cr)								
1	ENG 112	Advanced English	ENG 111	3	0	3	12	5
2	-	University Elective (Group 1)	-	3	0	3	12	5
3	HR 106	Human Rights	-	3	0	3	12	5
4	CSC 102	Discrete Mathematics	-	2	2	3	12	6
5	CSC 141	Communication Skills	-	3	0	3	12	6
6	CSC 142	Computer Ethics and Social Responsibility	ENG111	3	0	3	12	6
Year 2 – First Semester (18 Cr)								
1	-	University Elective (Group 2)	-	3	0	3	12	6
2	ARB 101	Arabic Language	-	3	0	3	12	6
3	CSC 202	Digital Logic	CSC 102	2	2	3	12	6
4	CSC 203	Mathematics 2	CSC 101	2	2	3	12	6
5	CSC 212	Object-Oriented Programming I	CSC 111	2	2	3	12	6
6	CSC 222	Software Engineering I	CSC 141	2	2	3	12	6
Year 2 – Second Semester (18 Cr)								
1	HBH 105	Bahrain Civilization and History	-	3	0	3	12	6
2	CSC 215	Data Structures	CSC 212	2	2	3	12	7
3	CSC 221	Database Systems	CSC 212	2	2	3	12	6

4	CSC 231	Computer Organization and Architecture	CSC 202	2	2	3	12	7
5	CSC 241	Scientific Research Methods	CSC 103	3	0	3	12	7
6	CSC 322	Web Based Software Development I	CSC 222	2	2	3	12	7
Year 3 – First Semester (18 Cr)								
1	CSC 304	Artificial Intelligence	CSC 212	2	2	3	12	7
2	CSC 314	Object Oriented Programming II	CSC 212	2	2	3	12	7
3	CSC 321	Systems Analysis and Design	CSC 221	2	2	3	12	7
4	CSC 325	Database Development	CSC 221	2	2	3	12	7
5	CSC 331	Operating Systems	CSC 231	3	0	3	12	7
6	-	Programme Elective (Group 1)	-			3	12	7
Year 3 – Second Semester (18 Cr)								
1	BA 161	Introduction to Entrepreneurship	-	3	0	3	12	6
2	CSC 301	Numerical Analysis	CSC 203	2	2	3	12	7
3	CSC 302	Computational Theory	CSC 102 & CSC 215	3	0	3	12	7
4	CSC 323	Visual Programming	CSC 314&CSC 221	2	2	3	12	8
5	CSC 332	Data Communication and Computer Networks	CSC 331	2	2	3	12	8
6	-	Programme Elective (Group 1)	-			3	12	7
Year 4 – First Semester (15 Cr)								
1	CSC 401	Algorithms Design & Analysis	CSC 102 & CSC 215	3	0	3	12	8
2	CSC 402	Compilers Design	CSC 302	3	0	3	12	8
3	CSC 425	Graduation Project 1	CSC 241&90 Hrs	3	0	3	12	8
4	CSC 441	Internship	CSC 321&90 Hrs	3	0	3	20	8
5	-	Programme Elective (Group 2)	-			3	12	8
Year 4 – Second Semester (15 Cr)								
1	CSC 426	Graduation Project 2	CSC 425	3	0	3	12	8
2	CSC 435	Ciphering and Computer Security	CSC 332	3	0	3	12	8
3	CSC 436	Mobile Computing	CSC 332	3	0	3	12	8
4	-	Programme Elective (Group 2)	-			3	12	8
5	-	Programme Elective (Group 2)	-			3	12	8

University Elective Courses

University Elective Courses (6 Cr)						
No.	Course Code	Course Title	Prerequisite	ASU Credit	NQF Credit	NQF Level
Group 1 (3 Cr)						
1	ISL101	Islamic Culture	-	3	12	6
2	ISL102	Islamic Ethics	-	3	12	6
3	ISL103	Islam & Contemporary Issues	-	3	12	6
Group 2 (3 Cr)						
1	LIB101	Introduction to Library Science	-	3	12	5
2	MAN101	Man and Environment	-	3	12	5
3	SOC101	Introduction to Sociology	-	3	12	5
4	SPT101	Special Topics	-	3	12	5
5	CS205	Computer Applications	CS104	3	12	5
6	LFS102	Thinking and communications skills development	-	3	12	5

Programme Elective Courses

Programme Elective Courses (15 Cr)								
No.	Course Code	Course Title	Prerequisite	Lec	Lab	ASU Credit	NQF Credit	NQF Level
Group 1 (6 Cr)								
1	CSC 204	Linear Algebra	CSC 203	2	2	3	12	7
2	CSC 305	Operations Research	CSC 103	3	0	3	12	7
3	CSC 326	Mobile Application Development	CSC 322&CSC 221	2	2	3	12	7
4	CSC 327	Web Based Software Development II	CSC 322&CSC 221	2	2	3	12	7
5	CSC 328	Human computer interaction	CSC 222	3	0	3	12	7
6	CSC 329	Multimedia Systems	CSC 322	2	2	3	12	7
7	CSC 421	Software Engineering II	CSC 222	2	2	3	12	7
Group 2 (9 Cr)								
1	CSC 312	Programming Languages Concepts	CSC 314	3	0	3	12	8
2	CSC 315	Data Mining	CSC 304	2	2	3	12	8
3	CSC 343	Special Topics in Computer Science	DEPT. APPROVAL	3	0	3	12	8
4	CSC 403	Image Processing	CSC 401	2	2	3	12	8

5	CSC 411	Computer Graphics	CSC 401	2	2	3	12	8
6	CSC 437	Cloud computing	CSC 332	2	2	3	12	8
7	CSC 438	Parallel and Distributed Computing	CSC 332	2	2	3	12	8

University Compulsory Courses

ENG 111 Upper-Intermediate English

This course is a continuation of what students studied in Pre-Intermediate English, and it is designed for students who study in the English stream at the university. It aims to improve their English skills such as reading, writing and grammar and help them understand various English sentence structures and enrich their vocabulary. (Oxford test score > 50 or ENG098)

ENG 112 Advanced English

This course is a continuation of what students studied in Upper-Intermediate English, and it is designed for students who study in the English stream at the university. It aims to help students improve their English skills so they can comfortably use the language in their major, which is offered in English. Also, the course aims to help them improve reading, writing, and English sentence structures, so they use English in different contexts. (Prerequisite: ENG 111)

ARB 101 - Arabic Language

This course deals with issues related to Arabic grammar and literature. It studies some basic linguistic issues in the vocabulary, morphology, syntax, and semantics of Arabic. It also studies stylistic and literary features through analyzing and discussing some selected texts from the Holy Quran and other literary masterpieces. (Prerequisite: None)

CS 104 - Computer Skills

This course covers the following topics: basic information technology concepts, using the computer to manage files, word processing, spreadsheets, presentation and database. (Prerequisite- None)

BA 161 - Introduction to Entrepreneurship

This course aims to study the concept of entrepreneurship, to explain its implications and significance, and to provide students with the knowledge and skills necessary to transform ideas into applied entrepreneurial projects in accordance with the rules of founding entrepreneurial projects. Moreover, the course aims to provide students with the core skills of an entrepreneur, starting from establishing the project, choosing the legal formula for it, planning, organizing, marketing, and financing until the whole process is fully managed while enabling students to submit proposals to establish a commercial

project and to discuss it at the end of the semester. Finally, the course aims to study practical cases for pioneering projects in the Kingdom of Bahrain. (Prerequisite: None)

HBH 105 - Bahrain Civilization & History

This course deals with the history of Bahrain from 1500-1800. It studies the stages of the Portuguese invasion of this part of the world and the international power struggle that erupted after the invasion. It also deals with the ruling of Al-Utuub Tribe of Bahrain and the reign of Al Khalifa as their reign is characterized by propensity, wisdom, freedom, and modern state. (Prerequisite: None)

HR 106 - Human Rights

This course discusses the basic principles of human rights. It acquaints the students with the nature of human rights, their realms, and sources, paying special attention to the international legal provisions concerning human rights included in the following documents: United Nations Charter, International Declaration of Human Rights, International Accord on Civil and Political Rights, International Accord on Social and Economic Rights, International agreement against torture and inhumane, disrespectful punishment, and Protection mechanisms and constitutional organization of public rights and freedoms in the Kingdom of Bahrain. (Prerequisite: None)

University Elective Courses

ISL 101 - Islamic Culture

The course deals with the concept of "Culture" in general and the concept of "Islamic Culture" in particular, and other related concepts. Thus, the course studies the characteristics of the Islamic culture, its sources, fields of study, and its role in creating the "Islamic character". It also deals with the so-called "cultural invasion", its types, methodologies, and ways of confronting it. (Prerequisite: None)

ISL 102 - Islamic Ethics

This course defines ethics and its aspects and how ethics plays an important role in our life in general and in workplaces in particular. It stresses the importance of ethics in Islam and the value Islam gives to ethics in general. This course deals with four aspects of ethics in Islam include its meaning, its significance, its effects, and its relation to work and work ethics. (Prerequisite: None)

ISL 103 - Islam & Contemporary Issues

This course deals with the way Islam deals with contemporary issues such as extremism, determination of the Islamic calendar, alms tax (Zakat) on money and jewelry, democracy and government system, cloning, abortion, and other related issues. (Prerequisite: None)

SPT 101 - Special Topics

This course deals with special contemporary topics that are important to university students. Such special topics help students understand their social, cultural, ethical, and economic environment so they are empowered with knowledge and skills. (Prerequisite: None)

LFS 102 - Thinking and Communications Skills Development

This course introduces students to the concept of thinking, its characteristics, its forms and its importance in the educational process. The course also deals with applying modern strategies and theories interpreted for different kinds of thinking. The course defines critical and creative thinking, differentiates between opinions and facts, hones students' skills in listening, negotiation and persuasion, giving a speech, solving problems, preparing for an interview, and writing a CV. (Prerequisite- None)

SOC 101 - Introduction to Sociology

The course introduces basic concepts in Sociology, its importance, approach, origin, and relation to other fields. Also, this course deals with scholars' contribution to Sociology. It also deals with topics related to Sociology such as social structure, culture, social systems, class, problems, and change. (Prerequisite: None)

MAN 101 - Man and Environment

This course defines environment in general and the difference between natural environment and constructed environment. It also deals with issues related to how environment is important to humans and how humans should interact with their environment and how human behaviour influences environment and vice versa. Moreover, this course demonstrates the essential role of institutions in protecting environment and the role students play to save their environment. Students are required to do some research related to environment. (Prerequisite: None)

LIB 101 - Introduction to Library Science

This course introduces students to the library sciences. It gives a general historical review of the development of libraries through the ages and sheds light on the importance of libraries in the development of knowledge and sciences. This course highlights the significance and function of information. Also, the course helps students to know how to use the library and its resources, digital database, and information systems. (Prerequisite- None)

CS 205 - Computer Applications

This course includes the following topics: using a word processing program to write reports, a spreadsheet software program to create an elementary accounting program, and a database software program to design an elementary information system. (Prerequisite: CS104)

College Compulsory Courses

CSC 101- Mathematics 1

This is the first course in calculus for computer science students. The course is intended to develop skills of the students in functions, differential and integral calculus. As well as it is intended to illustrate various applications of calculus to technical various problems. The rules of differentiation will introduce, and methods of differentiating various algebraic and transcendental functions will be developed. Methods of algebraic integration will be introduced, with both definite and indefinite integrals being determined for a variety functions. Also, topics include: function, limits, and continuity will be covered by the course. (Prerequisite- None)

CSC 102- Discrete Mathematics

The course provides the student with a generalized knowledge of discrete structures fundamental to computer science, focusing on providing theoretical foundation of further work. Topics include: logic of compound statements, sets and binary operations, operations on sets, functions, relations, introduction to graph theory, diagraph and trees, sequence and series, simple proof techniques and mathematical induction. (Prerequisite- None)

CSC 103- Probability and Statistics

This course introduces students to the detailed of Statistics and Probabilities. Topics include: introduction to concepts, tools, techniques and methods of probability and statistics. Presenting and describing of statistical data. Measures of central tendency and dispersion. Introduction to probabilities and their laws, sets, methods of counting. Random variables, probability distributions and sampling distributions. Correlation and Regression. (Prerequisite-None)

CSC 111- Structured Programming

This course will enable students to gain programming skills. It introduces computer programming methods and emphasis in problem solving on the fundamentals of structured design using the principles of top down problem solving strategy. The topics include: an introduction to computer programming, problem solving steps, program design modelling using pseudocode, algorithms, and flowcharts, also structured programming methods, constructs, and implementation using C++ programming language. (Prerequisite- None)

CSC 141- Communication Skills

The course covers issues related to effective technical communication, how to communicate with potential higher administrators, fellow, colleagues, and non-technical customers including: procedural (performing tasks), technical (using technology), personal (expressing identity), cooperative (interacting in groups), systems (interacting with organizations) and public (interacting with the wider community). (Prerequisite: None)

CSC 142- Computer Ethics and Social Responsibility

This course aims to provide students with a detailed knowledge and understanding of the principles and concepts which underpin a study of ethics and to give them in depth knowledge of how ethical concepts and actions impact on the field of information and communication technologies (ICT). The course focuses on the fundamental concepts of ethics, ethics theories, ethical standards of ICT, professionals and users of ICT, and ethical issues related to privacy and digital crimes. (Prerequisite: ENG 111)

CSC 241- Scientific Research Methods

The course introduces students to advanced knowledge and understanding of the research and develops the concepts, organizational structure and deliverables of a research project using qualitative

and quantitative methods including: problem statement definition, research scope, research objectives, methodologies, results and discussion. (Prerequisite: CSC 103)

Programme Compulsory Courses

CSC 202 – Digital Logic

This course provides students with detailed knowledge of design and implementation of digital circuits. Topics include: combinational and sequential logic circuits. Concepts of Boolean algebra, Karnaugh maps, flip-flops, registers, and counters along with various logic families and comparison of their behavior and characteristics. (Prerequisite: CSC 102)

CSC 203 – Mathematics 2

"Mathematics II" Course provides computer science students with detailed knowledge, basic and some advanced skills to deal with defined and some undefined problems in mathematics. The student will study algebraic and transcendental functions with an emphasis on integral calculus, sequences and series. The course will cover the main topics of definite and indefinite integrals, applications of integrals including areas, volumes and surface areas of solid revolution, arc length. Topics also include indeterminate form and L'Hopital's rule, techniques of integration, sequences, infinite series, power series and their convergence. (Prerequisite: CSC 101)

CSC 212 – Object Oriented Programming I

The aim of this course is to explain in detailed the principles of the object-oriented paradigm, provide familiarity with approaches to object-oriented modelling and design, syntax, pointers, files, class, inheritance, object-oriented programming concepts, and characteristics, data types, information hiding, constructors, destructors, friend function and friend class, array of objects, manipulating object, and inheritance (Prerequisite: CSC 111)

CSC 215 – Data Structures

This course covers advanced data Structures concepts, fundamentals and characteristics of Data structures, Array, Linked list, Stack, Queue, Graph, tree. In addition, student will learn and practice the suitable algorithm to manipulate the required data structure. (Prerequisite: CSC212)

CSC 221 – Database Systems

This course develops students' detailed knowledge and understanding in database systems. The students will be introduced to traditional files structure problems, database systems concepts, database systems evolution, database types, entity, attributes, relationship, and relationship degree, architecture, modeling methods using ERD, relational algebra, normalization and relational database constraints. SQL data definition and manipulation languages are also covered. (Prerequisite: CSC 212)

CSC 222 – Software Engineering I

This course provides students with detailed knowledge of the concepts and process models involved in software engineering. Students will learn principles of software engineering, evolving roles of software, software process, software product, process models and advanced models, requirements engineering: gathering, modeling and analysis, architectural design, component- level design, designing class-based components, component-level design for web applications, GUI, user interface design, web applications interface design. (Prerequisite: CSC 141)

CSC 231 – Computer Organization and Architecture

In this course students will be provided with detailed knowledge and understanding about fundamentals of computer organization, design and architecture as a hierarchy of levels, each one performing some well-defined function: the digital logic level, the microarchitecture level, the instruction set architecture level, and the assembly language level. The topics of the course include: introduction to the basic components of a computer, digital logic level, memory organization, the architecture of the microarchitecture level and its control, ISA level, assembly language and the assembly process and new trends in computer architecture. (Prerequisite: CSC 202)

CSC 301 – Numerical Analysis

This course provides students with advanced skills of numerical analysis. Topics include, mathematical preliminaries: computer arithmetic, round-off error, source of errors, solution of equations in one variable: bisection method, fixed point method, false position method, secant method, Newton-Raphson method, interpolation and polynomial approximation, introduction to interpolation, direct methods for solving linear systems of equations, iterative methods for solving linear systems, iterative methods for solving nonlinear systems, and curve fitting techniques. (Prerequisite: CSC 203)

CSC 302 – Computational Theory

This course emphasizes on advanced knowledge and understanding of computational and theoretical models. The topics include: concepts of automata, Finite Automata and Regular Expressions, Deterministic Finite Automata (DFA). Minimization of DFA; Non- Deterministic Finite Automata (NFA), Pumping Lemma, Mealy and Moore Machines, Ambiguity in Grammars and Languages. Standard Forms; Chomsky Normal Forms; Greibach Normal Forms, Pushdown Automata, Turing Machine. Computational Theory have direct bearing on practice, such as Automata on circuit design, verifying systems, compiler design, and search algorithms. (Prerequisite: CSC 102&CSC 215)

CSC 304 – Artificial Intelligence

This course provides students with advanced skills of Artificial intelligence (AI). Topics include: principles of intelligent systems, approaches used in AI field, problem solving strategies, knowledge representation and reasoning, uncertainty processing, learning and cooperation. (Prerequisite: CSC 212)

CSC 314 – Object Oriented Programming II

This course provides students with advanced skills of object-oriented programming (OOP). Topics include: programming techniques in designing and implementing an object-oriented program, implementing the characteristics and qualifiers of object- oriented programming to create programs for solving business problems with the application of some data structures using JAVA programming language. Students will gain experience in the application of structured programming in practice and, mirroring professional practice, this will be facilitated largely in a real based environment. Students will learn and practice via teamwork. (Prerequisite: CSC 212)

CSC 321 – Systems Analysis and Design

This course provides students with an advanced knowledge and understanding of the concepts and practice of information systems analysis. The students will gain skills in Information Systems requirements analysis and logical system specifications. The student will also learn several systematic approaches and tools for the analysis process management and techniques that will enable them to analyze systems in a team environment. (Prerequisite: CSC 221)

CSC 322 – Web Based Software Development I

This course provides students with advanced knowledge and understanding of the principles of the context of Web based software development. Topics include: creating a web site using HTML, CSS and JavaScript. Other topics such as, creating tables, page division, inserting animation and multimedia,

using/creating templates, managing hosting and its control panel are also covered. (Prerequisite: CSC 222)

CSC 323 – Visual Programming

This course provides students with critical knowledge and understanding of visual programming(C#, Visual C++,VB,…) theories and concepts. The course emphasises on event-driven programming methods, including creating and manipulating objects, classes, and using object-oriented tools. In addition to event -driven Windows programming, data types, operators, objects and properties, menus, procedures, control structures, database file processing, using human computer interaction principles to enhance user interface design. (Prerequisite: CSC 314 &CSC 221)

CSC 325 – Database Development

The course provides students with advanced knowledge and understanding of the database development topics: practicing the database PL/SQL (Cursors, Triggers, Functions, Procedures…). Also the student will practice Database development tools such as: APEX, Oracle Developer: Forms, Reports and Graphics. (Prerequisite: CSC 221)

CSC 331 – Operating Systems

This course presents and discusses advanced topics of operating systems including: virtual machines, real-time and embedded systems, distributed and parallel processing, file systems, fault tolerance, performance evaluation, management functions (memory, device (I/O), Process) and OS security/protection. (Prerequisite: CSC 231)

CSC 332 – Data Communications and Computer Networks

This course aims at providing students with a critical knowledge and a firm foundation of about data communication and computer networking. A thorough understanding of concepts and mechanisms underlying general telecommunications and networking is essential for students to be able to learn and grasp knowledge about other advanced and specific technologies and architectures. (Prerequisite: CSC 331)

CSC 401 – Algorithms Design & Analysis

Algorithms play the central role of both in science and practice of computing, it focusing on both the underlying mathematical theory and practice considerations of efficiency. This course introduces critical

knowledge and understanding of concepts, theories, techniques to support the analysis and design of algorithms. Topics include analysis of algorithm efficiency, problem- solving: analysis and synthesis, analysis criteria, asymptotic growth rates, brute force and exhaustive search, time complexity, Sorting algorithms, graphs and Graph Traversals, Adjacency Matrix, Traversing Graphs, Breadth-first search and Depth-first search. (Prerequisite: CSC 102&CSC 215)

CSC 402 – Compilers Design

In this course, students will develop critical knowledge and understanding of specialist theories, principles and concepts of compilers design, major problems in translation of programming languages, compilation steps, difference among translators, Top- down versus bottom-up grammatical analysis, codes generation, and storage allocation strategies. It includes the building of translators, identifies and explores the main issues of the design of translators, lexical analysis, parsing, symbol tables, declaration, code generation, and optimization techniques. (Prerequisite: CSC 302)

CSC 425 – Graduation Project 1

In Graduation Project (1, 2), student critically applies the accurate IT project development methodologies to develop either a software system with accompanying report or a comprehensive IT research report based on the research activity undertaken - oriented to real life problems.

In this course (Graduation Project 1), the student identify specific problem (define the research questions), conducts a literature survey, analysis, and design for the proposed solution (an artifact) to the identified problem utilizing computer algorithms, software packages and/or hardware devices. This gives the opportunity for individual student, to take the responsibility of executing applied research in the CSC426-Graduation Project 2 with guidance from a supervisor. At the end of this course, the student will demonstrate the outcome of the project and will submit part one of graduation project report. (Prerequisite: CSC241&90 credit hours)

CSC 426 – Graduation Project 2

In this course, the student has to use the outcomes of CSC425 Graduation Project 1 to implement and test the proposed solution. This will take place with guidance from a supervisor. At the end of the course, the student has to demonstrate the project findings and submit a complete graduation project report. Student will use knowledge and skills gained in earlier studied courses and implement them in this phase. Students will be required to plan their work and meet deadlines, they also need to demonstrate the outcome of their IT research/ software system and write a comprehensive report. (Prerequisite: CSC 425)

CSC 435 – Ciphering and Computer Security

In this course, students will be provided with a critical knowledge and understanding of algorithms and protocols from modern cryptology, computer security and secure communication, and equip the student to apply this theory to the problems of building secure applications. The topics of the course include: computer security concepts, security attacks, security services, security mechanisms, symmetric and asymmetric ciphers, block ciphers, DES, AES, block cipher operation, message confidentiality, public- key cryptography and message authentication, the RSA algorithm, Diffie-Hellman key exchange, key distribution, hash functions and user authentication. (Prerequisite: CSC 332)

CSC 436 – Mobile Computing

This course will provide students with both broad and in-depth knowledge, and a critical understanding of mobile computing and mobile communication from different viewpoints: infrastructures, principles and theories, technologies, and applications in different domains. In this course, the following topics will be discussed: basic issues in mobile computing, mobile communications, wireless networks, cellular network and architectures, communication protocols, mobile computing applications, smart phone technology, the application design and environment and the future of mobile computing. (Prerequisite: CSC 332)

CSC 441 – Internship

The internship is a pre-arranged, credit-bearing work experience, which allows a student to achieve personal goals that are aligned with the goals of a supervising professional organisation or agency. Internships provide opportunities to explore career options, test career choices, and encourage the development of skills within a chosen field. An internship allows students to relate theory with practical job experience as well as develop new skills that will be transferable to future employers. (Prerequisite: CSC321&90 credit hours)

Programme Elective Courses

CSC 204 – Linear Algebra

This course provides students with advanced skills of linear algebra to help them develop the ability to solve problems using linear algebra. This course includes: the study of systems of linear equations, matrices, determinants, vectors and vector spaces, linear transformations, eigenvalues and eigenvectors, and their applications. Linear algebra is a core course in many engineering, physics, mathematics, and computer science programs. Computer software will be used to enhance the learning and teaching of topics and techniques covered. (Prerequisite: CSC 203)

CSC 305 – Operations Research

Operations Research (OR) provides methodological tools which can support business managers in decisions making covering all aspects (internal and external). The purpose of the course is to provide students with advanced knowledge and some specialized tools to help them understand the operations research and mathematical modeling methods. These methods will help the students to solve problems in different environments that needs decisions. The course teaches the students specialized methods of operations research and applications for optimization problems.

The course cover topics that include: OR models, solving the OR model, linear programming applications, the simplex method and sensitivity analysis, duality and post-optimal analysis, Transportation model, and Network model. (Prerequisite: CSC 103)

CSC 312 – Programming Languages Concepts

This course focuses on programming languages' specifications and concepts which gives students critical knowledge that they can argue persuasively why a particular language is appropriate or inappropriate for a particular problem. Topics are: Concepts of programming languages, domains, evaluation, environments, syntax formal methods, attribute grammars, binding, scope, types (data, user-defined, record, tuple, list, union, pointer, and reference), arithmetic expressions, operators, conversions, programming statements, subprograms, parameter-passing methods, design issues for functions, user-defined overloaded operators, dynamic scoping, abstract data types, and object-oriented languages. (Prerequisite: CSC 314)

CSC 315 – Data Mining

This course provides students with advanced knowledge and understanding of Data Mining algorithms and computational paradigms that allow computers to find patterns and regularities in databases, perform prediction and forecasting, and generally improve their performance through interaction with data. The Data Mining process includes data selection, cleaning, coding, using different statistical and machine learning techniques, and visualization of the generated structures. The course will cover all these issues and will illustrate the whole process by examples. (Prerequisite: CSC 304)

CSC 326 – Mobile Application Development

The course provides students with critical knowledge and understanding of the mobile application development. This course covers key technologies underlying mobile application development. Topics include mobile platforms, GUI design, mobile programming, web services processing, database access and event-driven programming. (Prerequisite: CSC 322 & CSC 221)

CSC 327 – Web Based Software Development II

This course provides students with advanced knowledge and understanding of web applications development. Topics include: web applications development, smart devices and Web design programming languages (i.e. PHP, ASP.NET and others), web hosting, file transfer protocol, control panel for local and remote servers, web development tools (i.e. Word Press, Yii frameworks, Dreamweaver and others) (Prerequisite: CSC 322 & CSC 221)

CSC 328 – Human Computer Interaction

This course focuses on advanced topics in human computer interaction (HCI) development and use. The topics includes HCI analysis, design, implementation and evaluation of interactive computing system for human use; Ergonomics; Components of an interactive system; The Human; Input - output channels, the eye, hearing, touch, smell, taste, movement, memory; The computer: Interacting with computers, Virtual reality concept, Virtual reality for HW/SW, Virtual reality applications. (Prerequisite: CSC222)

CSC 329 – Multimedia Systems

This course provides students with advanced knowledge of multimedia systems. Topics include: multimedia system concepts, Color images and videos, Lossless Compression Algorithms, Lossy Compression Algorithms, Image Compression standards, Basics of digital Audio, Multimedia Network Applications, Internet multimedia content distribution, Multimedia over Wireless and Mobile Networks, Multimedia information sharing and retrieval. (Prerequisite: CSC 322)

CSC 343– Special Topics in Computer Science

This course provides students with critical knowledge and understanding of the concepts and practice of the hottest topics and the latest research or technology in the field of Computer Science. The topic might be different from one run to another; an approval from the computer science department is required to select the course content whenever offering the course. (Prerequisite- Dept Approval)

CSC 403 – Image Processing

This course provides students with critical knowledge of concepts and applications image processing. Topics include image processing concepts, intensity transformations and spatial filtering, some basic intensity transformation functions, histogram processing image enhancement, image filtering, image restoration, image deblurring and denoising, color image processing, color models, The RGB Color Model, The CMY and CMYK Color, image compression and watermarking and morphological image processing. (Prerequisite: CSC 401)

CSC 411 – Computer Graphics

This course provides students critical knowledge of Computer Graphics. Topics include: concepts of computer graphics. It starts with an overview of interactive computer graphics, Rectangles Using Paths to Draw Line, Transformations scale and translate, Methods: Drawing Ellipses, Rotate Method: Creating a two dimensional system and mapping, then it presents drawing algorithm, two-dimensional transformation; Clipping, filling and an introduction to 3-D graphics. (Prerequisite: CSC 401)

CSC 421 – Software Engineering II

This course is a continuation of the study of software engineering I (CSC222). While "Software Engineering I" focuses on software production topics such as processes, requirements and architectures, Software Engineering II focuses on an advanced knowledge and understanding of a broad set of principles and practices affecting the success and failure of software development. The topics of the course include: Quality Concepts, Reviews, Quality Assurance, Software Testing (Component Level, Integration Level, Specialized Testing for Mobility), Project Management Concepts and Risk Management. The last part of the course will cover the principles of software maintenance, the different strategies for changing software systems and reengineering. (Prerequisite: CSC 222)

CSC 437 – Cloud Computing

The course provides students with critical knowledge and understanding of the cloud computing technologies. Topics include cloud infrastructure, reference model, resource management, programming models, application models, system characterizations, and implementations, deployment of cloud computing systems, parallel processing in the cloud, distributed storage systems, virtualization, security in the cloud, and multicore operating systems. (Prerequisite: CSC 332)

CSC 438 – Parallel and Distributed Computing

This course provides students critical knowledge and understanding in theory of parallelism and distributed computing, communication, concurrency, hardware and software features, language features for concurrent and distributed systems, concurrent and distributed algorithms and middleware, coordination, sequential and parallel processing, parallel and scalable architecture, parallel decomposition, multiple simultaneous computations, and parallel computer models. (Prerequisite: CSC 332)

Bachelor of Graphic Design

ASU
جامعة العلوم التطبيقية
APPLIED SCIENCE UNIVERSITY

Programme Coordinator:
Dr. Mohamed Al-Abbar

Office Number:
+973 16036139

Email:
yasser.abbar@asu.edu.bh

Head of Department:
Dr. Mohamed Abdeldayem

Office Number:
+973 16036338

Email:
mohamed.soltan@asu.edu.bh

Apply Now

Enquiry

Programme Details

Final Qualification	Language of Study	Mode of Study
Bachelor of Graphic Design	Arabic	Full Time

Programme Structure

Study Period	Total Credit Hours	Number of Courses
4 Years	135 Credit Hours	44 Courses

Brief about the Programme

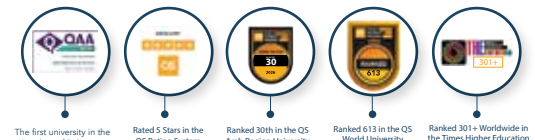
The Graphic Design programme offers a distinguished academic experience combining creativity, innovation, and international standards. It is an accredited programme and a member of the International Council of Design (ICoD), developed in accordance with NASAD benchmarks and the latest 2021 international and regional standards.

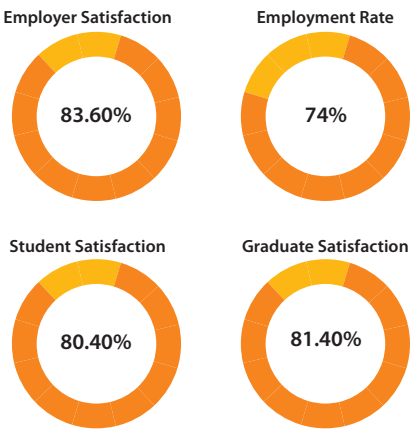
The programme aims to develop creative thinking skills and understanding of user behaviours, translating them into innovative design solutions covering print, multimedia, and digital technologies.

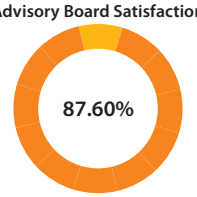
Carefully designed to align with the needs of the labour market in Bahrain and the region, the programme promotes scientific research and modern communication technologies, giving its graduates a strong competitive advantage within the national qualifications framework and qualifying them to excel in the world of design and creativity.

Aims of the Programme

1. Prepare graduates capable of using design methodologies, creative thinking, and research methods in the field of visual communication, understanding and analysing user behaviours, and pursuing continuous learning to solve graphic problems related to markets, commercial competition, community needs, and the environment, as well as preparing graduates for postgraduate studies.
2. Provide a stimulating creative study environment to equip graduates with specialised design skills and their applications in print, multimedia, video technologies, user interfaces, animation, and computer technologies across various fields of graphic design, in line with local and regional labour market requirements.
3. Enable graduates to communicate and use modern communication technologies, engage in fieldwork, lead and work within multidisciplinary teams, assume responsibility, respect intellectual property issues, and contribute to building the local community.







Career Paths

1. Graphic Designer
2. Smart Application Interface Designer
3. Advertising Designer
4. Digital Illustrator
5. Visual Identity Designer
6. Social Media Content Designer
7. Video & Visual Effects Designer
8. Print Designer
9. Art Director
10. Game & Animation Designer

Entry Requirements

1. The applicant must hold a secondary school certificate certified by the Ministry of Education in the Kingdom of Bahrain or its equivalent with a grade of not less than %60.
2. Students with grades below %60 may apply for bachelor›s programmes if they meet one of the following conditions:
   - Athletes and artists who represent the Kingdom in external events.
   - Those with sufficient work experience of not less than one year after obtaining the secondary school certificate.
   - The University Council has the right to decide on applications from students with grades below %60.
   - Students admitted under point (2) must not exceed %20 of those admitted at the academic programme level.
3. Applicants must pass an interview and assessment test conducted by a committee from the department.
4. Transfer students are admitted according to the bachelor›s degree award regulations of the university.
5. All students admitted to the university take a mandatory test to determine their English language level:
   - Students scoring between 40-0 must study the English Language Remedial course (ENG 099).
   - Students are exempted from ENG 099 if they obtain 5 or above in IELTS, or 450 or above in TOEFL.

Study Plan

Programme Study Plan								
No.	Course Code	Course Title	Prerequisite	Lec	Lab	ASU Credit	NQF Credit	NQF Level
Year 1 – First Semester (18 Cr)								
1	ADE 1091	Introduction to Drawing	-	0	6	3	12	5
2	ADE 1110	Design Fundamentals	-	1	4	3	12	5
3	GDE 111	Computer Graphics 1	-	1	4	3	12	5
4	CS 104	Computer Skills	-	2	2	3	12	5
5	HR 106	Human Rights	-	3	0	3	12	5
6	-	University Elective (Group 1)		-	-	3	12	5
Year 1 – Second Semester (18 Cr)								
1	GDE 120	History of Modern Art	-	3	0	3	12	6
2	GDE 214	Computer Graphic 2	GDE 111	1	4	3	12	6
3	GDE 116	Drawing & Painting	ADE 1091	0	6	3	12	6
4	GDE 113	Typography1	ADE 1110	1	4	3	12	6
5	ENG 101	English language I	-	3	0	3	12	5
6	HBH 105	Bahrain Civilization & History	-	3	0	3	12	6
Year 2 – First Semester (18 Cr)								
1	GDE 231	Principles of Graphic Design	GDE 113	1	4	3	12	6
2	GDE 211	Photography	ADE 1110	1	4	3	12	6
3	GDE 216	Computer Graphics 3	GDE 214	1	4	3	12	6
4	GDE 222	History of Graphic Design	GDE 120	3	0	3	12	7
5	ENG 102	English language II	ENG 101	3	0	3	12	5
6	ARB 101	Arabic Language	-	3	0	3	12	6
Year 2 – Second Semester (18 Cr)								
1	GDE 232	Branding Design	GDE 231	1	4	3	12	7
2	GDE 221	Communication Theory	GDE 120	1	0	3	12	7
3	GDE 315	3D Computer Graphic	GDE 214	1	4	3	12	7
4	GDE 334	Illustration 1	GDE 214 & GDE 116	1	4	3	12	7

5	GDE 237	Typography 2	GDE 113	1	4	3	12	7
6	BA 161	Introduction to Entrepreneurship	-	3	0	3	12	6
Year 3 – First Semester (18 Cr)								
1	GDE 336	Digital Video	GDE 211	1	4	3	12	7
2	GDE 333	Advertising Design	GDE 232	1	4	3	12	7
3	GDE 341	Printing Technology & Specifications	GDE 237	1	4	3	12	7
4	GDE 325	Design and Marketing	GDE 222	3	0	3	12	7
5	GDE 335	Design & Layout of Publications	GDE 216	1	4	3	12	7
6	-	University Elective (Group 2)	-	-	-	3	12	6
Year 3 – Second Semester (18 Cr)								
1	GDE 338	Packaging Design	GDE 341	1	4	3	12	8
2	GDE 339	Design for Multimedia	GDE 336	1	4	3	12	8
3	GDE 434	Outdoor Design & Symbols	GDE 333	1	4	3	12	8
4	GDE 343	Ethics & Practice of Profession	GDE 341	3	0	3	12	8
5	-	Programme Elective (Group 1)	-	-	-	3	12	7
6	-	Programme Elective (Group 1)	-	-	-	3	12	7
Year 4 – First Semester (15 Cr)								
1	GDE 431	Graduation Project Studies	GDE 333	3	0	3	12	8
2	GDE 442	Internship	90 Cr&GDE 335	-	-	3	20	8
3	IND 4053	Design Collaboration	GDE 339	3	0	3	12	8
4	GDE 432	Web Page Design	GDE 333	1	4	3	12	8
5	-	Programme Elective (Group 1)	-	-	-	3	12	7
Year 4 – Second Semester (12 Cr)								
1	GDE 433	Graduation Project	GDE 431	0	12	6	24	8
2	-	Programme Elective (Group 2)	-	-	-	3	12	8
3	-	Programme Elective (Group 2)	-	-	-	3	12	8

University Elective Courses

University Elective Courses (6 Cr)						
No.	Course Code	Course Title	Prerequisite	ASU Credit	NQF Credit	NQF Level
Group 1 (3 Cr)						
1	ISL 101	Islamic Culture	-	3	12	6
2	ISL 102	Islamic Ethics	-	3	12	6
3	ISL 103	Islam & Contemporary issues	-	3	12	6
Group 2 (3 Cr)						
1	LIB 101	Introduction to Library Science	-	3	12	5
2	MAN 101	Man and Environment	-	3	12	5
3	SOC 101	Introduction to Sociology	-	3	12	5
4	SPT 101	Special Topics	-	3	12	5
5	CS 205	Computer Applications	CS104	3	12	5
6	LFS 102	Thinking and communications skills development	-	3	12	5

Programme Elective Courses

Programme Elective Courses (15 Cr)								
No.	Course Code	Course Title	Prerequisite	Lec	Lab	ASU Credit	NQF Credit	NQF Level
Group 1 (9 Cr)								
1	GDE 212	Digital Photography	GDE 211	1	4	3	12	7
2	GDE 217	Arabic Calligraphy	GDE 113	1	4	3	12	7
3	GDE 218	Anatomy Art	GDE 116	1	4	3	12	7
4	GDE 219	Geometry in Design	GDE 231	1	4	3	12	7
5	GDE 224	Design in Islamic Arts	GDE 120	3	0	3	12	7
6	GDE 225	Design Process	GDE 222	2	2	3	12	7
7	GDE 327	Industry & Art	GDE 222	1	4	3	12	7
8	GDE 312	Drawing & Painting 2	GDE 116	0	6	3	12	7
9	GDE 328	Psychology & Sociology Design	GDE 232	3	0	3	12	7
10	GDE 430	Digital Game Design	GDE 315	1	4	3	12	7
Group 2 (6 Cr)								
1	IND 2097	3D Printing & 3D Scanning	GDE 315	2	2	3	12	8
2	GDE 300	Special Topics in Graphic Design	GDE 333	2	2	3	12	8

3	GDE 421	Critical Issues in Design	GDE 221	3	0	3	12	8
4	GDE 436	Animation Design	GDE 334	1	4	3	12	8
5	GDE 437	Calligraphy & Design	GDE 237	1	4	3	12	8
6	GDE 438	Portfolio Design	GDE 335	1	4	3	12	8
7	GDE 439	Illustration 2	GDE 334	1	4	3	12	8

University Compulsory Courses

ARB 101 Arabic Language
This course deals with issues related to Arabic grammar and literature. It studies some basic linguistic issues in the vocabulary, morphology, syntax, and semantics of Arabic. It also studies stylistic and literary features through analyzing and discussing some selected texts from the Holy Quran and other literary masterpieces. (Prerequisite- None)

ENG 101 English Language I
This course is designed to help students to communicate effectively in English for academic purposes. It helps students to acquire some communication skills in reading, writing, and note-taking at pre-intermediate level using the appropriate grammar and vocabulary for this level. Finally, the course is intended to improve students' skills in English, so they get ready for a further English credit course (ENG102), and use English in their academic life. (Oxford test score > 40 or ENG099)

ENG 102 English Language II
This course is designed to help students to communicate effectively in English for academic purposes. It helps students to acquire some communication skills in reading and writing at intermediate level using the appropriate grammar and vocabulary for this level. Finally, the course is intended to improve students' skills in English, so they take credit courses taught in English and to use English in their academic life. (Prerequisite: ENG 101)

CS 104 Computer Skills
This course covers the following topics: basic information technology concepts, using the computer to manage files, word processing, spreadsheets, presentation and database. (Prerequisite- None)

BA 161 Introduction to Entrepreneurship
This course aims to study the concept of entrepreneurship, to explain its implications and significance, and to provide students with the knowledge and skills necessary to transform ideas into applied entrepreneurial projects in accordance with the rules of founding entrepreneurial projects. Moreover, the course aims to provide students with the core skills of an entrepreneur, starting from establishing the project, choosing the legal formula for it, planning, organizing, marketing, and financing until the whole process is fully managed while enabling students to submit proposals to establish a commercial project and to discuss it at the end of the semester. Finally, the course aims to study practical cases for pioneering projects in the Kingdom of Bahrain. (Prerequisite- None)

HBH 105 Bahrain Civilization & History
This course deals with the history of Bahrain from 1500-1800. It studies the stages of the Portuguese invasion of this part of the world and the international power struggle that erupted after the invasion. It also deals with the ruling of Al-Utuub Tribe of Bahrain and the reign of Al Khalifa as their reign is characterized by propensity, wisdom, freedom, and modern state. (Prerequisite- None)

HR 106 Human Rights
This course discusses the basic principles of human rights. It acquaints the students with the nature of human rights, their realms, and sources, paying special attention to the international legal provisions concerning human rights included in the following documents: United Nations Charter, International Declaration of Human Rights, International Accord on Civil and Political Rights, International Accord on Social and Economic

Rights, International agreement against torture and inhumane, disrespectful punishment, and Protection mechanisms and constitutional organization of public rights and freedoms in the Kingdom of Bahrain. (Prerequisite- None)

University Elective Courses

ISL 101 Islamic Culture
The course deals with the concept of "Culture" in general and the concept of "Islamic Culture" in particular, and other related concepts. Thus, the course studies the characteristics of the Islamic culture, its sources, fields of study, and its role in creating the "Islamic character". It also deals with the so-called "cultural invasion", its types, methodologies, and ways of confronting it. (Prerequisite- None)

ISL 102 Islamic Ethics
This course defines ethics and its aspects and how ethics plays an important role in our life in general and in workplaces in particular. It stresses the importance of ethics in Islam and the value Islam gives to ethics in general. This course deals with four aspects of ethics in Islam include its meaning, its significance, its effects, and its relation to work and work ethics. (Prerequisite- None)

ISL 103 Islam & Contemporary Issues
This course deals with the way Islam deals with contemporary issues such as extremism, determination of the Islamic calendar, alms tax (Zakat) on money and jewellery, democracy and government system, cloning, abortion, and other related issues. (Prerequisite- None)

SPT 101 Special Topics
This course deals with special contemporary topics that are important to university students. Such special topics help students understand their social, cultural, ethical, and economic environment so they are empowered with knowledge and skills. (Prerequisite- None)

LFS 102 Thinking and communications skills development
This course introduces students to the concept of thinking, its characteristics, its forms and its importance in the educational process. The course also deals with applying modern strategies and theories interpreted for different kinds of thinking. The course defines critical and creative thinking, differentiates between opinions and facts, hones students' skills in listening, negotiation and persuasion, giving a speech, solving problems, preparing for an interview, and writing a CV. (Prerequisite- None)

SOC 101 Introduction to Sociology
The course introduces basic concepts in Sociology, its importance, approach, origin, and relation to other fields. Also, this course deals with scholars' contribution to Sociology. It also deals with topics related to Sociology such as social structure, culture, social systems, class, problems, and change. (Prerequisite- None)

MAN 101 Man and Environment
This course defines environment in general and the difference between natural environment and constructed environment. It also deals with issues related to how environment is important to humans and how humans should interact with their environment and how human behaviour influences environment and vice versa. Moreover, this course demonstrates the essential role of institutions in protecting environment and the role students play to save their environment. Students are required to do some research related to environment. (Prerequisite- None)

LIB 101 Introduction to Library Science
This course introduces students to the library sciences. It gives a general historical review of the development of libraries through the ages and sheds light on the importance of libraries in the development of knowledge and sciences. This course highlights the significance and function of information. Also, the course helps students to know how to use the library and its resources, digital database, and information systems. (Prerequisite- None)

CS 205 Computer Applications
This course includes the following topics: using a word processing program to write reports, a spreadsheet software program to create an elementary accounting program, and a database software program to design an elementary information system. (Prerequisite- CS104)

College Compulsory Courses

ADE 1091 - Introduction to Drawing
The course introduces students to various freehand drawing tools and materials, their uses, and applying the principles of freehand drawing, perspective, shade, light and its gradation on different objects and materials. (Prerequisite- None)

ADE 1110 - Design Fundamentals
The course includes a study of the principles and elements of design, the formation of two-dimensional (2D) and three- dimensional (3D), introduction of colour theory, and practical applications and projects which continue to the develop students' ability in the sensory perception of visual formations and stereotypes. (Prerequisite- None)

IND 4053 – Design Collaboration
This course encourages students to engage in collaborative activities and design, and to engage in different cognitive approaches for analysis and investigation issues that affect the world in which we live. It is designed to deepen students critical and creative understanding of the subject matter by placing it in a broader context. (Prerequisite GDE 339)

Programme Compulsory Courses

GDE 111 - Computer Graphics 1
This course helps students to possess the ability to use the Bitmap characteristics and features in the design and implementation of various visual elements, processing and blending images, using colors, preparing designs for the production process and relying on self-learning to cope with technical development. (Prerequisite: None)

GDE 113 - Typography1
The course is an introduction to typography and its history; it teaches the principles of typography through Latin and Arabic characters' segmentation and structure, character formation, and the experience of creating a literal shape as a communication element. (Prerequisite: ADE1110)

GDE 116 - Drawing & Painting
The course focuses on enhancing the student's ability to express different formations and materials using colour pencils.
(Prerequisite: ADE1091)

GDE 120 – History of Modern Art
The course teaches history of art, architecture, graphic, sculpture, visual arts and design in Europe, and the different influences that impacted them like social and artistic influences which contributed to its development from the European Age of Enlightenment to present day, and the relevant environmental contexts. (Prerequisite: None)

GDE 211 - Photography
The course includes studying the camera, its development and techniques, the various imaging equipment, the photographic principles, the light and composition. It also deals with the image as a visual communication element. The student will experiment different modes and techniques of photography in the studio. (Prerequisite: ADE1110)

GDE 214 - Computer Graphics 2
This course helps students to possess the ability to utilize the Vector characteristics and features in the design and implementation of various visual elements, processing and blending images, using colors, preparing designs for production process, converting between vector and bitmap technologies, and relying on self-learning to keep abreast of the technical development and production process design. (Prerequisite: GDE 111)

GDE 216 - Computer Graphic 3
The course introduces the most important principles and basics of professional layout software, the practice on layout software, particularly InDesign, preparing and dividing the page and columns, inserting the titles, texts, images, and editing them with practical projects that deals with modelling and simulations for some newspapers and magazines. (Prerequisite: GDE 214)

GDE 221 - Communication Theory
The course explores the most important communication theories related to visual communication, analysis of mass communication problems, psychological factors, critical and semiotics theory. It also introduces the use of appropriate means to determine people's desires, needs, patterns of behaviour and propose appropriate communication solutions. (Prerequisite: GDE 120)

GDE 222 - History of Graphic Design
The course includes the graphic design history and theories, the development role of printing technology, media, communication theory, visual sciences and artistic movements to form the concepts of visual communication. This course also focuses on visual communication concepts, and meeting the most important works and pioneers of design, and the contemporary and professional issues and practices. (Prerequisite: GDE 120)

GDE 231 - Principles of Graphic Design
The course exposes students to the visual communication concepts, it also introduces them to the formation, simplification, and creation of free and geometric shapes and connecting them with the communication concept. (Prerequisite: GDE 113)

GDE 232 - Branding Design
The course deals with the trademarks and their role in the communication process, the characteristics and features of the company logo, testing the research process, and preparing the logo and formulating the company's visual identity. (Prerequisite: GDE 231)

GDE 237 - Typography 2
This course is a reinforcement of the previous course "Typography 1", which complements the theoretical concepts of alphabet design, development and production of Arabic and Latin typefaces, and process of research and development of letters and alphabets forms that support the solutions of visual communication problems, and gain the advanced understanding, techniques and skills required in the labour market. (Prerequisite: GDE 113)

GDE 315 - 3D Computer Graphic
The course includes the construction and development of students' skills in the use of three-dimensional (3D) graphics software so that the student can form, display and handle all three-dimensional graphic designs in line with contemporary trends based on studying the depth and impact of the recipient through the three-dimension and simulation reality. (Prerequisite: GDE 214)

GDE 325 – Design and Marketing
The course aims to study the art of marketing, promotion, advertising campaigns, the effects of needs, motives, trends and desires in marketing, organizing the advertising message, identifying the work mechanism in advertising companies. It also teaches the role of the graphic designer in the marketing process and the role of media and technology in deepening the importance of electronic marketing, and studying the impact of advertising on the recipient and surrounding environment. (Prerequisite: GDE 222)

GDE 333 - Advertising Design
The course focuses on the art of the poster, its history and role in the communication process, the technical and visual foundations of the poster, analysing the communication process and developing design responses that respect social and cultural rights. This course also includes the differences between design users, critical analysis practice related to functional, utilitarian and environmental aspects of design. (Prerequisite: GDE 232)

GDE 334 - Illustration 1
The course includes the study of the basic principles, concepts and elements of illustrations as one of the means of visual communication, conducting research and development, designing children's story characters, and drawing two-dimensional (2D) scenes, and dialogue scenes. (Prerequisite: GDE 214 & GDE 116)

GDE 335 - Design & Layout of Publications
The course deals with the design and layout of publications, their techniques and role in the communication process, planning the publication design, studying the target audience to reach the appropriate solutions. It also includes the analysis of the results in terms of ease of use, the recipient's appeal, technical relevance, economic feasibility and sustainability. (Prerequisite: GDE 216)

GDE 336 - Digital Video
The course designed to familiarize students with the practice and processing of video camera, editing software, concepts related to narrative structure and others in the areas of video production. (Prerequisite: GDE 211)

GDE 338 - Packaging Design
The course focuses on packaging, its techniques and communication problems, planning and understanding of design at different levels, starting from the components of appropriate packaging systems, and its impact on the target audience. This course also covers the design analysis in a critical way associated with utility and ease of use, the economic and technology feasibility, and sustainability. (Prerequisite: GDE 341)

GDE 339 – Design for Multimedia
The course includes the recognition of multimedia systems, and applications combining the use of text, graphics, sound, animation and video, to utilize them in the field of graphic communication. (Prerequisite: GDE 336)

GDE 341 - Printing Technology & Specifications
The course includes a theoretical study and practical applications to identify the types of old and modern printing techniques, their applications in arts, design and printing on various materials, advertising materials, and digital printing. The course also includes the study of paper types, its measurements, printing inks, with practical applications on various materials showing design and printing techniques. (Prerequisite: GDE 237)

GDE 343 - Ethics & Practice of Profession
The course includes the functional knowledge of professional design practices and processes, professional and ethical behaviours, intellectual property issues such as patents, trademarks and copyrights, management, marketing and economics principles, business, contracts and globalization from a professional perspective. (Prerequisite: GDE 341)

GDE 431 - Graduation Project Studies
This course is characterized by research nature where the student selects a particular subject or problem and carries out the planning process, which involves surveying and critical analysis of the associated communication problems, comparing them with research results and similar professional practices. The student will use the appropriate means to determine the wishes, needs and patterns of behaviour of the target audience. This course also addresses strategies for alternative solutions that respect social, cultural and environmental rights. (Prerequisite: GDE 333)

GDE 432 - Web Page Design
The course aims to introduce the communication mechanisms associated with web pages and their techniques, the designing and layout based on the function and studying the target audience, and finally working effectively in multidisciplinary teams and possessing the cooperative skills to solve complex problems. (Prerequisite: GDE 333)

GDE 433 - Graduation Project
In this course, the student benefits from the results of his study in the graduation project studies. He presents solutions to communication problems based on the previous formulated design strategy and design understanding at different levels, starting from the components of production systems to achieve the objective of the previous research, taking into account the differences between recipients of design, ease of use, economic and technological feasibility, and sustainability. (Prerequisite: GDE 431)

GDE 434 - Outdoor Design & Symbols
This course deals with the problems of communication for graphic and advertisement designs related to advanced advertising and functional purposes of two- and three-dimensional (2D and 3D) graphics, those

purposes focus on raw materials and its techniques, specifications, drawing method and presentation of these designs, which includes large three-dimensional advertisements and symbols related to services design. (Prerequisite: GDE 333)

GDE 442 - Internship
The course includes the practice of experience in the application of knowledge, design and skills outside the classroom, and attention to prepare for facing the practical life, and integration into the labour market after graduating through training in official institutions or private or professional offices or advisory specialized and relevant field of specialization, to apply those theoretical and practical courses that have been studied in reality. The student will be followed up by an academic supervisor to evaluate his performance through a specialized committee. (Prerequisite: 90 Cr & GDE 335)

Programme Elective Courses

IND 2097 - 3D Printing & 3D Scanning
The course provides the needed knowledge and skill to produce and print 3D objects, as well as to generate and prepare data for that. It focuses on the use of two professional technologies; 3D Printing, 3D Scanning and related software which enables students to utilize these technologies in their future projects. (Prerequisite: GDE 315)

GDE 212 - Digital Photography
This is an advanced course compared to the "Photography" Course, it supports professionally the photography of advertising models within the studio, taking into consideration the differences related to materials, type and image processing. (Prerequisite: GDE 211)

GDE 217 - Arabic Calligraphy
The course is concerned with studying the types and methods of Arabic Calligraphy and its historical development. The student will gain the ability to write and form letters and words in accordance with configurations that emanate from the concepts of graphic communication. (Prerequisite: GDE 113)

GDE 218 - Anatomy Art
The course introduces the measures and mechanism of human body movement, train the student to sketch the human body in its various situations and movements and recognize the structure of the human body from the skeleton and muscles and their formative and kinetic effect on the shape and movement of the whole body, and finally to identify the physical differences between the body growth stages and the formal differences between the women and men body and benefit from it in the implementation of various design works. (Prerequisite: GDE 116)

GDE 219 - Geometry in Design
This course is concerned with the methods of geometric drawing, grades and proportions that help the designer to apply the geometric designs, letters, layout and various dimensions associated with three dimensional (3D) designs. (Prerequisite: GDE 231)

GDE 224 - Design in Islamic Arts
The course focuses on the study of art, architecture, and design and their development during different Islamic eras. It analyses cultural and social contexts that influence the formation of the characteristics of this urbanity and the way designers respond to those conditions. (Prerequisite: GDE 120)

GDE 225 - Design Process
The course covers the access to design through a series of actions that bring the imaginary leap from a current situation to future possibilities. It focuses mainly on the development of stylistic solutions and logical results of design problems through analytical scientific contexts. (Prerequisite: GDE 222)

GDE 300 - Special Topics in Graphic Design
This course is an open window to developments and techniques that challenge the designers in their career and require attention to their personal development. (Prerequisite: GDE 333)

GDE 312 - Drawing & Painting 2
The course includes the expression of the technical configurations using the techniques of colors of all kinds and gain experience and ability to quick sketches with strong lines and quick shadows and experience using pastel colors and colored pens. (Prerequisite: GDE 116)

GDE 327 - Industry & Art
The course introduces the art role in the industry, as well as the modern theory study in the industrial design, the role of industrial production and various raw materials in the design form and function, and its impact on the development of modern design theories, and to apply practical applications to achieve useful and aesthetic models, such as the lighting structures design, design containers and office equipment design. (Prerequisite: GDE 222)

GDE 328 - Psychology & Sociology Design
The content of this course is concerned with the study of psychological aspects because of the great impact on the success of various designs and influence on the mood and psyche of the design recipient. This course also covers the role played by the designer in influencing the social behavior and habits of the users. (Prerequisite: GDE 232)

GDE 421 - Critical Issues in Design
This course focuses on contemporary communication issues related to graphic design, and how to utilize them in a critical, analytical way via a range of contemporary artistic experiences and practices. (Prerequisite: GDE 221)

GDE 430 – Digital Game Design
The course aims to teach students the basics of creating games using the Unreal Engine. Students will study ways to create environments related to first-person games, and develop game themes and ways to control their characters. The Course also aims to facilitate the game development learning curve for learners. (Prerequisite: GDE 315)

GDE 436- Animation Design
The course introduces the basic principles of animation art, its beginnings, animation, and basis, developing the animated personality and performance style manually or through computer programs. It also enhances students' skills in graphic design, movement analysis, manual skills and its animation methods, drawing, coloring and digital movement. (Prerequisite: GDE 334)

GDE 437- Calligraphy & Design
The course introduces the use of calligraphy in building the design, enhancing the student's design ability to use handwriting and typography, training in layout the words according to traditional and modern methods, in accordance with the nature and spirit of design, using various artistic and graphic additions to the lettering, and using typefaces as an expressive method in the designing various subjects with different techniques in proportion to their functions and objectives. (Prerequisite: GDE 237)

GDE 438 - Portfolio Design
This course helps the student to design the business file for the purpose of applying for a job. This course considers as an advanced course compared to the presentations presented by the student in other courses. (Prerequisite: GDE 335)

GDE 439 - Illustration 2
The course includes the development of students' practical performance and deepening their personal style and artistic and expressive vision through the design of illustrations for a variety of subjects such as the children's story design, novels, encyclopaedias, storyboard drawings, learning the diagram art and implementing designs and applied works for service or commercial buildings. (Prerequisite: GDE 334)

Bachelor of Interior Design

ASU
جامعة العلوم التطبيقية
APPLIED SCIENCE UNIVERSITY

Programme Coordinator:
Dr. Nader Sonpol

Office Number:
+973 16036351

Email:
nader.sonpol@asu.edu.bh

Head of Department:
Dr. Mohamed Abdeldayem

Office Number:
+973 16036338

Email:
mohamed.soltan@asu.edu.bh

Apply Now

Enquiry

Programme Details

Final Qualification	Language of Study	Mode of Study
Bachelor of Interior Design	Arabic	Full Time

Programme Structure

Study Period	Total Credit Hours	Number of Courses
4 Years	132 Credit Hours	42 Courses

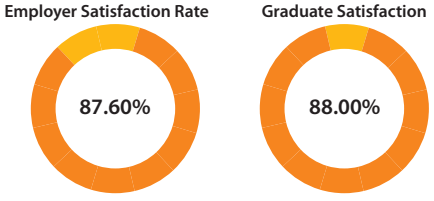
Brief about the Programme

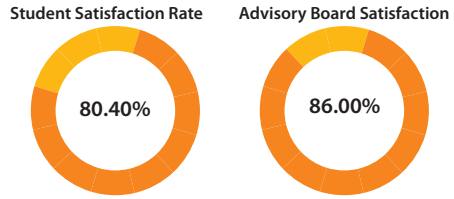
Launch your career in interior design with an internationally accredited programme, a member of the International Federation of Interior Architects/Designers (IFI) and the International Council of Design (ICoD), designed to the highest global accreditation standards (CIDA). The programme focuses on creating interior environments that enhance human well-being and meet the needs of interaction in workplaces, homes, and public spaces. It combines theoretical and practical learning with intensive training in the latest design technologies including CAD, Building Information Modelling (BIM), smart materials, lighting simulation, and field visits that open new horizons.

The programme relies on effective stakeholder partnerships to ensure its outcomes align with the requirements of the Bahraini and regional labour market, qualifying its graduates to excel and innovate in the field.

Aims of the Programme

1. Prepare specialised graduates in interior design capable of meeting the needs of the local and regional labour market.
2. Prepare graduates deeply grounded in the practical aspects of the discipline, particularly creative applications of modern technology, opening broader future avenues for learning and developing human thought.
3. Prepare graduates capable of seeing the broader human and environmental context while fulfilling their professional responsibilities in light of the discipline.
4. Prepare open-minded and engaged graduates capable of following systematic approaches, creative thinking, and responding to cultural and environmental changes.
5. Prepare graduates who carry a humane vision towards their community that respects diversity in functional and cultural requirements, with sufficient awareness of the future to achieve sustainable development.





Career Paths

1. Interior Designer
2. Furniture Designer
3. Space Design Consultant
4. Interior Lighting Designer
5. Design Project Manager
6. AutoCAD Draughtsperson
7. Exhibition Décor Designer
8. Urban Interior Design Consultant

Entry Requirements

1. The applicant must hold a secondary school certificate certified by the Ministry of Education in the Kingdom of Bahrain or its equivalent with a grade of not less than %60.
2. Students with grades below %60 may apply for bachelor›s programmes if they meet one of the following conditions:
   - Athletes and artists who represent the Kingdom in external events.
   - Those with sufficient work experience of not less than one year after obtaining the secondary school certificate.
   - The University Council has the right to decide on applications from students with grades below %60.
   - Students admitted under point (2) must not exceed %20 of those admitted at the academic programme level.
3. Applicants must pass an interview and assessment test conducted by a committee from the department.
4. Transfer students are admitted according to the bachelor›s degree award regulations of the university.
5. All students admitted to the university take a mandatory test to determine their English language level:
   - Students scoring between 40–0 must study the English Language Remedial course (ENG 099).
   - Students are exempted from ENG 099 if they obtain 5 or above in IELTS, or 450 or above in TOEFL.

Study Plan

Programme Study Plan								
No.	Course Code	Course Title	Prerequisite	Lec	Lab	ASU Credit	NQF Credit	NQF Level
Year 1 – First Semester (18 Cr)								
1	ADE 1091	Introduction to Drawing	-	0	6	3	12	5
2	IND 1092	Principles of Architectural Drawing	-	1	4	3	12	6
3	ADE 1110	Design Fundamentals	-	1	4	3	12	5
4	CS 104	Computer Skills	-	2	2	3	12	5
5	ENG 101	English Language I	-	3	0	3	12	5
6	HR 106	Human Rights	-	3	0	3	12	5
Year 1 – Second Semester (18 Cr)								
1	IND 1071	Design and Environment Behavior	IND 1092	2	2	3	12	6
2	IND 1093	Presentation Techniques	IND 1092	1	4	3	12	6
3	IND 1094	Computer-Aided Design (CAD) I	IND 1092	1	4	3	12	6
4	ADE 1100	Historical Environments	ADE 1091	3	0	3	12	6
5	ENG 102	English Language II	ENG 101	3	0	3	12	5
6	HBH 105	Bahrain Civilization & History	-	3	0	3	12	6
Year 2 – First Semester (18 Cr)								
1	IND 2081	Interior Design Studio 1	IND 1071 & ADE 1110	1	4	3	12	6
2	IND 2131	Interior Materials & Finishes	IND 1094	2	2	3	12	6
3	IND 2095	Computer-Aided Design (CAD) II	IND 1094	2	2	3	12	7
4	ARB 101	Arabic Language	-	3	0	3	12	6
5	BA 161	Introduction to Entrepreneurship	-	3	0	3	12	6
6	-	University Elective (Group 1)	-	3	0	3	12	5
Year 2 – Second Semester (15 Cr)								
1	IND 2112	Interior Design Studio 2	IND 2081	1	4	3	12	6
2	IND 2151	Interior Structures & Constructions	IND 2131	2	2	3	12	7
3	IND 2121	Light & Color in Interior	IND 2081	3	0	3	12	7

		Environments						
4	IND 3103	History of Interior Design	ADE 1100	3	0	3	12	7
5	-	University Elective (Group 2)	-	3	0	3	12	6
Year 3 – First Semester (18 Cr)								
1	IND 3113	Interior Design Studio 3	IND 2112	1	4	3	12	7
2	IND 3141	Building Systems and Codes	IND 2121	3	0	3	12	7
3	IND 3117	Furniture Design	IND 2112	2	2	3	12	7
4	IND 3152	Interior Structures & Constructions 2	IND 2151	2	2	3	12	7
5	-	Programme Elective (Group 1)	-	-	-	3	12	7
6	-	Programme Elective (Group 1)	-	-	-	3	12	7
Year 3 – Second Semester (15 Cr)								
1	IND 3114	Interior Design Studio 4	IND 3113	1	4	3	12	7
2	IND 3142	Sustainability in Design	IND 3113	3	0	3	12	7
3	IND 3051	Building Information Modeling (BIM) I	IND 2151	2	2	3	12	7
4	IND 3061	Ethics & Practice of the Profession	IND 3141	3	0	3	12	8
5	IND 4040	Internship (BID)	90 Hrs & IND 3113	-	-	3	20	8
Year 4 – First Semester (15 Cr)								
1	IND 4115	Interior Design Studio 5	IND 3114 & IND 2151	2	8	6	24	8
2	IND 4071	Programming and Research	IND 3114	3	0	3	12	8
3	IND 4062	Specification and Estimation	IND 3051	3	0	3	12	8
4	-	Programme Elective (Group 2)	-	-	-	3	12	8
Year 4 – Second Semester (15 Cr)								
1	IND 4116	Graduation Project	IND 4115 & IND 4071	0	12	6	24	8
2	IND 4053	Design Collaboration	IND 3114	3	0	3	12	8
3	-	Programme Elective (Group 2)	-	-	-	3	12	8
4	-	Programme Elective (Group 2)	-	-	-	3	12	8

University Elective Courses

University Elective Courses (6 Cr)						
No.	Course Code	Course Title	Prerequisite	ASU Credit	NQF Credit	NQF Level
Group 1 (3 Cr)						
1	ISL 101	Islamic Culture	-	3	12	6
2	ISL 102	Islamic Ethics	-	3	12	6
3	ISL 103	Islam & Contemporary Issues	-	3	12	6
Group 2 (3 Cr)						
1	LIB 101	Introduction to Library Science	-	3	12	5
2	MAN 101	Man and Environment	-	3	12	5
3	SOC 101	Introduction to Sociology	-	3	12	5
4	SPT 101	Special Topics	-	3	12	5
5	CS 205	Computer Applications	CS 104	3	12	5
6	LFS 102	Thinking and communications skills development	-	3	12	5

Programme Elective Courses

Programme Elective Courses (15 Cr)								
No.	Course Code	Course Title	Prerequisite	Lec	Lab	ASU Credit	NQF Credit	NQF Level
Group 1 (6 Cr)								
1	IND 1099	Advance Perspective	IND 1092	0	6	3	12	7
2	IND 2098	Digital rendering of Architectural Drawings	IND 1094	2	2	3	12	7
3	IND 2103	Islamic Built Environment	ADE1100	3	0	3	12	7
4	IND 3116	Kitchen and Bath Design	IND 3141	2	2	3	12	7
5	IND 3118	Interior Plantations & Courtyard Design	IND 3113	1	4	3	12	7
6	IND 4162	Psychology & Sociology Design	IND 2081	3	0	3	12	7
Group 2 (9 Cr)								
1	IND 2096	Computer-Aided Design (CAD) III	IND 2095	2	2	3	12	8
2	IND 2097	3D Printing & 3D Scanning	IND 2095	2	2	3	12	8
3	IND 3000	Special Topics in Design	Dept. Approval	-	-	3	12	8
4	IND 3098	Interior Design Animation	IND 2095	2	2	3	12	8
5	IND 3115	Exhibition Design	IND 2121	2	2	3	12	8

6	IND 3122	Lighting Design	IND 2121	3	0	3	12	8
7	IND3133	Innovative Materials	IND2151	3	0	3	12	8
8	IND 3154	Rehabilitation of Heritage Buildings	IND 3142	3	0	3	12	8
9	IND 4111	Hospitality Design	IND 3113	1	4	3	12	8
10	IND 4041	Interior Design Advanced Internship "On-Site"	IND 4040	-	-	3	12	8
11	IND 4042	Interior Design Study Tours	IND 3103	2	2	3	12	8
12	IND 4043	Bahrain's Experience in Interior Design	IND 3103	3	0	3	12	8
13	IND 4052	Building Information Modeling (BIM) II	IND 3051	2	2	3	12	8
14	IND 4104	Critical Issues in Design	IND 3103	3	0	3	12	8

University Compulsory Courses

ARB 101 Arabic Language
This course deals with issues related to Arabic grammar and literature. It studies some basic linguistic issues in the vocabulary, morphology, syntax, and semantics of Arabic. It also studies stylistic and literary features through analyzing and discussing some selected texts from the Holy Quran and other literary masterpieces. (Prerequisite- None)

ENG 101 English Language I
This course is designed to help students to communicate effectively in English for academic purposes. It helps students to acquire some communication skills in reading, writing, and note-taking at pre-intermediate level using the appropriate grammar and vocabulary for this level. Finally, the course is intended to improve students' skills in English, so they get ready for a further English credit course (ENG102), and use English in their academic life. (Oxford test score > 40 or ENG099)

ENG 102 English Language II
This course is designed to help students to communicate effectively in English for academic purposes. It helps students to acquire some communication skills in reading and writing at intermediate level using the appropriate grammar and vocabulary for this level. Finally, the course is intended to improve students' skills in English, so they take credit courses taught in English and to use English in their academic life. (Prerequisite: ENG 101)

CS 104 Computer Skills
This course covers the following topics: basic information technology concepts, using the computer to manage files, word processing, spreadsheets, presentation and database. (Prerequisite- None)

BA 161 Introduction to Entrepreneurship
This course aims to study the concept of entrepreneurship, to explain its implications and significance, and to provide students with the knowledge and skills necessary to transform ideas into applied entrepreneurial projects in accordance with the rules of founding entrepreneurial projects. Moreover, the course aims to provide students with the core skills of an entrepreneur, starting from establishing the project, choosing the legal formula for it, planning, organizing, marketing, and financing until the whole process is fully managed while enabling students to submit proposals to establish a commercial project and to discuss it at the end of the semester. Finally, the course aims to study practical cases for pioneering projects in the Kingdom of Bahrain. (Prerequisite-None)

HBH 105 Bahrain Civilization & History
This course deals with the history of Bahrain from 1500-1800. It studies the stages of the Portuguese invasion of this part of the world and the international power struggle that erupted after the invasion. It also deals with the ruling of Al-Utuub Tribe of Bahrain and the reign of Al Khalifa as their reign is characterized by propensity, wisdom, freedom, and modern state. (Prerequisite-None)

HR 106 Human Rights
This course discusses the basic principles of human rights. It acquaints the students with the nature of human rights, their realms, and sources, paying special attention to the international legal provisions concerning human rights included in the following documents: United Nations Charter, International Declaration of Human Rights, International Accord on Civil and Political Rights, International Accord on Social and Economic Rights, International agreement against torture and inhumane, disrespectful punishment, and Protection mechanisms and constitutional organization of public rights and freedoms in the Kingdom of Bahrain. (Prerequisite- None)

University Elective Courses

ISL 101 Islamic Culture
The course deals with the concept of "Culture" in general and the concept of "Islamic Culture" in particular, and other related concepts. Thus, the course studies the characteristics of the Islamic culture, its sources, fields of study, and its role in creating the "Islamic character". It also deals with the so-called "cultural invasion", its types, methodologies, and ways of confronting it. (Prerequisite- None)

ISL 102 Islamic Ethics
This course defines ethics and its aspects and how ethics plays an important role in our life in general and in workplaces in particular. It stresses the importance of ethics in Islam and the value Islam gives to ethics in general. This course deals with four aspects of ethics in Islam include its meaning, its significance, its effects, and its relation to work and work ethics. (Prerequisite- None)

ISL 103 Islam & Contemporary Issues
This course deals with the way Islam deals with contemporary issues such as extremism, determination of the Islamic calendar, alms tax (Zakat) on money and jewellery, democracy and government system, cloning, abortion, and other related issues. (Prerequisite- None)

SPT 101 Special Topics
This course deals with special contemporary topics that are important to university students. Such special topics help students understand their social, cultural, ethical, and economic environment so they are empowered with knowledge and skills. (Prerequisite- None)

LFS 102 Thinking and communications skills development
This course introduces students to the concept of thinking, its characteristics, its forms and its importance in the educational process. The course also deals with applying modern strategies and theories interpreted for different kinds of thinking. The course defines critical and creative thinking, differentiates between opinions and facts, hones students' skills in listening, negotiation and persuasion, giving a speech, solving problems, preparing for an interview, and writing a CV. (Prerequisite- None)

SOC 101 Introduction to Sociology
The course introduces basic concepts in Sociology, its importance, approach, origin, and relation to other fields. Also, this course deals with scholars' contribution to Sociology. It also deals with topics related to Sociology such as social structure, culture, social systems, class, problems, and change. (Prerequisite- None)

MAN 101 Man and Environment
This course defines environment in general and the difference between natural environment and constructed environment. It also deals with issues related to how environment is important to humans and how humans should interact with their environment and how human behaviour influences environment and vice versa. Moreover, this course demonstrates the essential role of institutions in protecting environment and the role students play to save their environment. Students are required to do some research related to environment. (Prerequisite- None)

LIB 101 Introduction to Library Science
This course introduces students to the library sciences. It gives a general historical review of the development of libraries through the ages and sheds light on the importance of libraries in the development of knowledge and sciences. This course highlights the significance and function of information. Also, the course helps students to know how to use the library and its resources, digital database, and information systems. (Prerequisite- None)

CS 205 Computer Applications
This course includes the following topics: using a word processing program to write reports, a spreadsheet software program to create an elementary accounting program, and a database software program to design an elementary information system. (Prerequisite- CS104)

College Compulsory Courses

ADE1091 - Introduction to Drawing
The course introduces students to various freehand drawing tools and materials, their uses, and applying the principles of freehand drawing, perspective, shade, light and its gradation on different objects and materials. (Prerequisite- None)

ADE1110 - Design Fundamentals
The course includes a study of the principles and elements of design, the formation of two-dimensional (2D) and three-dimensional (3D), and introduction of colour theory, and its practical applications and projects which contribute to the develop students' ability in the sensory perception of visual formations and stereotypes. (Prerequisite- None)

IND 4053 – Design Collaboration
This course encourages students to engage in collaborative activities and design, and to engage in different cognitive approaches for analysis and investigation issues that affect the world in which we live. It is designed to deepen students critical and creative understanding of the subject matter by placing it in a broader context. (Prerequisite IND3114)

Programme Compulsory Courses

ADE 1100 – Historical Environments
This course deals with the study of the history of architecture and the visual arts, with emphasis on the main models and styles of architecture, interior design, furniture, decoration, and the way in which designers and architects respond to the social, cultural, and environmental conditions affecting them. The time frame of this course extends from the Ancient Near East. Until the late Nineteenth Century (in Europe). This course is a prerequisite for 'History of Interior Design' Course. (Prerequisite: ADE 1091)

IND 1071 - Design and Environment Behavior
The course deals with the relationships between the body, the objects, the culture, the events and the environment in a habitable world within the built environment, and it is composed of both aesthetic and practical requirements (user needs and their behavior, human factors, context, building systems, etc.). (Prerequisite: IND 1092)

IND 1092 - Principles of Architectural Drawing
This course builds on the familiarity between the students and architectural drawing methods and applications. The student will be taught and trained to use the engineering tools, symbols and engineering lines, and drawing of geometric projections of objects and forms (orthographic and paraline projections) based on a common architectural language that communicates with other relevant specializations. (Prerequisite-None)

IND 1093 - Presentation Techniques
The course focuses on principles of perspective drawing, and representation of interior spaces with the help of perspective techniques (perspective at a one vanishing point/ two vanishing points). As well as the conceptual drawings and rendering techniques, and professional graphics for professional presentations. (Prerequisite: IND 1092)

IND 1094 - Computer-Aided Design (CAD) I
This course explores the architectural language and the graphic standards of 2D designs as the basis of three-dimensional (3D) drawings, conducting to the development of drawing skills that lead to understanding the relationship between two dimensional (2D) and three dimensional design (3D), design schemes, as well as enhancing the ability to communicate visually and graphically. (Prerequisite: IND 1092)

IND 2081 - Interior Design Studio 1
This course represents the introduction to basic interior design principles and an introduction to research as a tool for understanding programming and design. Lectures, applications and case study methodology will be used to investigate different design strategies and to show the relationship of history and human behaviour in the context of the habitable environment. This
course provides students with methodologies, design processes, use of colour, anthropometric and ergonomics and design elements related to interior design. (Prerequisite: IND 1071 & ADE 1110)

IND 2095 - Computer-Aided Design (CAD) II
This course promotes the building of student skills in the creation and study of computer aided 3D drawings after completing "Computer-Aided Design (CAD) I" Course. So that the student can form and manipulate three-dimensional (3D) shapes and succeed in producing environments that emulate reality to a large extent. (Prerequisite: IND 1094)

IND 2112 - Interior Design Studio 2
This course deals with the organization, planning and design of the internal spaces of the residential activities, including (space and functional analysis requirements, movement and spatial organization requirements, motor regulation, internal surface treatment and human dimensions), with a focus on the space and privacy concepts, in order to provide students with an internal design project for residential space and produce it in an appropriate manner. (Prerequisite: IND 2081)

IND 2121 - Light & Color in Interior Environments
The course deals with the basics of interior lighting design and its relationship to colour and its impact in supporting health, safety, comfort and human performance, and identify light sources and systems, measurement and calculation of lighting. Students learn to analyse the spatial requirements of light, identify appropriate systems, calculate the appropriate lighting level, and draw up reflected ceiling plans and identify their symbols and keys. (Prerequisite: IND 2081)

IND 2131 - Interior Materials & Finishes
This course explores the features, characteristics and applications of textiles and other materials used in construction, furnishings, surfaces and finishes in the built environment. The course also provides students with an opportunity to learn how to choose the right materials to meet specific criteria. (Prerequisite: IND 1094)

IND 2151 - Interior Structures & Constructions
The course deals with the relationship between the structural system of the building with internal constructions and the effects thereof, and the methods of construction and internal structures, while enabling students to understand the regulations, components and accepted standards to create an integrated and comprehensive set of internal construction documents. (Prerequisite: IND 2131)

IND 3051- Building Information Modeling (BIM) I
The Course is an introduction to BIM (Building Information Modeling), a multi-dimensional integrated database, it covers the drawings, building scenes, calculations, quantities, detection of conflicts before they occur, energy efficiency analysis, structural analysis and construction scheduling which automatically derived from BIM. The course addresses the implications of this advanced technology and covers the basic tools for the implementation of the BIM. (Prerequisite: IND 2151)

IND 3061- Ethics & Practice of the Profession
The course includes an introduction to the ethics and responsibilities of the interior designer. It presents topics such as the role of companies, technology transfer, small business management, marketing and promotion, scope of services, job description, contracts, ethics and auditing. The course includes studying project management contract documents from an ethical standpoint. (Prerequisite: IND 3141)

IND 3103 - History of Interior Design
The course covers the study of the development of internal environments, as well as the most prominent theories and movements related to the interior design which emerged during the twentieth century. It also teaches the study of social, economic, technological and anthropological considerations that influenced the design thought across the different historical stages. (Prerequisite: ADE 1100)

IND 3113 - Interior Design Studio 3
This course discusses and applies the design philosophies, theories and creative design strategies at the intermediate level (targeting shops/ and hospitality). It also focuses on: research, surveying, analysis, design processes, spatial and functional analysis, branding, construction technology, design elements and principles, human factors, creative problem solving, lighting requirements, internal component selection and preparing a presentation. (Prerequisite: IND 2112)

IND 3114 - Interior Design Studio 4
This studio focuses on contemporary issues related to business/ office and institutional styles, construction technology, and sustainable design. Design and technological issues are addressed through: understanding of office culture, modeling Industry, construction systems, solar considerations, internal environmental quality, HVAC systems, space planning, material selection and finishes, lighting design, integration of furniture and equipment, and code requirements. The course emphasizes solutions based on comprehensive and sustainable design thinking, organizing complex spatial responses, and understanding that design is a structure in nature. (Prerequisite: IND 3113)

IND 3117 - Furniture Design
This course focuses on issues related to furniture design, including construction (composition and production), methods, function, sustainability, technical aspects and costs associated with furniture. The course also allows students to develop and model their designs and transfer them to construction. Those skills will be gained through the study of human structure and search for suitable materials and construction techniques. (Prerequisite: IND 2112)

IND 3141 - Building Systems and Codes
In this course, students will be introduced to the basic elements of the building systems (COD) and its systems, including mechanical systems (ventilation and air conditioning), health service systems (sanitation, nutrition and health systems), fire safety systems, data / voice systems), supervision and safety. (Prerequisite: IND 2121)

IND 3142 - Sustainability in Design
This course explores the sustainable design and the fundamentals of the Green Building Initiative. It also exposes a review of the concepts, strategies and classification systems adopted by the LEED Leadership Program in the United States. Students will complete this course with a basic understanding of the objectives, concepts and terminology of all LEED categories, as well as green building practices, sustainable products, and the importance of synergies. (Prerequisite: IND 3113)

IND 3152 – Interior Structures & Constructions 2
The course deals with studying the existing and new technologies and materials in the interior design world, as well as the study of the effects of construction laws and manufacturing specifications for selecting both structural and nonstructural elements. This reflects students' achievement of drawings and structural details and develops understanding the relationship between drawings and specifications with a focus on residential and commercial projects. (Prerequisite: IND 2151)

IND 4040 - Internship (BID)
This course provides an opportunity for students to gain experience in the workplace and translate what they have learned in the classroom into a practical reality. It focuses on enhancing students' practical and transformational skills, where more knowledge and skills are acquired for professional development and to meet future business requirements. This course allows them to work well in a culturally diverse work environment. In addition, it helps to expose students' skills and benefits gained from the training experience in the fields of study and life. (Prerequisite: 90 Hrs & IND 3113)

IND 4062 – Specification and Estimation
This course focuses on studying the basics of technical specifications and estimates the cost of interior design projects, including the quantities of construction materials, wages, supervision and others. (Prerequisite: IND 3051)

IND 4071 – Programming and Research
This is the preparation of the graduation project report (chosen by the student in coordination with the supervisor and approval of the department council). It includes the collection of all information and data related to the project, including theoretical studies related to the project subject matter, analysis of user characteristics and needs, development of the project program and functional relations, and identification of conceptual trends for design and discussion of spatial characteristics, color, materials and surface treatments suitable for the project. The report is presented for discussion by a jury. (Prerequisite: IND 3114)

IND 4115 - Interior Design Studio 5
This advanced, comprehensive studio emphasizes the solution of various design issues in a multi-functional building project and in collaboration with a design team. It extends from the initial design to the development stage of the design and then the constructional documents, it is based on the knowledge acquired in previous courses (design, history, theories, and technology). Students gather their research and design ideas and apply their knowledge in a comprehensive final presentation. (Prerequisite: IND 3114 & IND 2151)

IND 4116 - Graduation Project
The course provides an opportunity for the student to express himself and his vision as a designer, and combines theory and skills gained during the program. During this course, the student will submit an integrated internal design based on research, combination and development of a predetermined graduation project within the graduation project course/ programming (IND 4071). The project will be presented and discussed in front of a specialized academic panel including an external expert. (Prerequisite IND 4115 & IND 4071)

Programme Elective Courses

IND 1099 – Advance Perspective
This course focuses on the applications of perspective drawing, sketch of interior spaces with the help of engineering perspective techniques (perspective at a single vanishing point/ two points/and three points), as well as the study of shade and shadow projections in perspective. (Prerequisite: IND 1092)
IND 2096 - Computer-Aided Design (CAD) III
This course enhances student skills in the creation and study of computer aided 3D drawings after completing "Computer-Aided Design (CAD) II" Course, allowing students to build complex scenes, work in complex contexts, produce night and day scenes, and benefit from dedicated software for visualization and simulation of reality. (Prerequisite: IND 2095)

IND 2097 - 3D Printing & 3D Scanning
The course provides the needed knowledge and skill to produce and print 3D objects, as well as generate and prepare data for that. It focuses on the use of two professional technologies; 3D Printing, 3D Scanning and related software which enables students to utilize these technologies in their future projects. (Prerequisite: IND 2095)

IND 2098- Digital Rendering of Architectural Drawings
This course helps the student to have the ability to use features of dedicated software using Bitmap technology for the processing of graphics and images and mixing them, and in the operations of displaying and printing various graphics and designs. (Prerequisite: IND 1094)

IND 2103 - Islamic Built Environment
This course sheds lighter on the study of art, architecture, interior design and its development during the various Islamic eras. It analyzes the cultural and social contexts that have influenced the character of this urbanization and the manner in which the designers respond to those conditions. (Prerequisite: ADE 1100)

IND 3000 - Special Topics in Design
The course deals in-depth with internal design issues. It may include new issues in the field of interior design, or issues proposed by the faculty members. (Prerequisite: Dept. Approval)

IND 3098 - Interior Design Animation
The course introduces digital animation techniques for interior spaces, moving cameras. The course revolves around real-world projects, workshops, practical tips and tricks used in 3D animation techniques. The student also learns time saving techniques, testing some tips for production at maximum speed and highest efficiency in the animation processes of interior designs. (Prerequisite: IND 2095)

IND 3115 - Exhibition Design
This course deals with the design of the exhibition pavilion at local and international exhibitions, with a focus on the impact of the context in which this type of activity takes place. The student will have to provide an appropriate lighting scheme and specifications along with utilizing the colour theories and taking into account the relevant standards. (Prerequisite: IND 2121)

IND 3116 - Kitchen and Bath Design
This course focuses on requirements, standards, code, symbols, materials, finishes, and constructions related to bathroom and kitchen designs. In addition to connecting the requirements of plumbing and installation of equipment and electrical equipment with the design of these events. (Prerequisite: IND 3141)

IND 3118 - Interior Plantations & Courtyard Design
The objectives of this course are to introduce the most important designs, functional and visual aspects of plants and internal structures. In addition to that, it also introduces the internal plantations (in terms of varieties, species, use and care), and selecting suitable furnishing and finishing materials. Students will have to apply this in a specific project. (Prerequisite IND 3113)

IND 3122 - Lighting Design
This course focuses on the design and analysis of lighting using software, by introducing students to a range of digital lighting simulation techniques. This course will expose students to theoretical aspects of lighting analysis and design, as well as the tools used to enhance the integration of lighting analysis in the architectural or interior design process. Students will apply these guidelines in a design project. (Prerequisite: IND 2121)

IND 3133 – Innovative Materials
The course deals with in-depth studies in the fields of raw materials and materials used in internal constructions, with a focus on studies and research related to smart and environmentally-friendly materials, and their methods for installation and use. (Prerequisite: IND 2151)

IND 3154 - Rehabilitation of Heritage Buildings
This course deals with the theoretical bases and concepts of the rehabilitation and use of historical and heritage buildings. This course provides the student with the suitable ground to choose appropriate rehabilitation policies to bring back the project to its original purpose for which it was developed, or for the purpose of converting it to serve another purpose. (Prerequisite: IND 3142)

IND 4041- Interior Design Advanced Internship "On-Site"
This is an advanced internship that focuses on advanced issues in internal design practice learned through the working experience with professionals. It requires the student to have completed the "Internship" course . (Prerequisite: IND 4040)

IND 4042 - Interior Design Study Tours
The course provides an opportunity to introduce students to various cultural and artistic sites through out-of-campus supervision, this will broaden their vision of the design profession. The significant lectures and tours are designed for interior design, architecture, furniture and associated arts. (Prerequisite: IND 3103)

IND 4043 - Bahrain's Experience in Interior Design
This course explores the reality and trends of interior design in the local environment by conducting a field study of the reality of interior design in the region. This study includes collecting and documenting all necessary information and data and analyzing it with a view to extracting the local experience in interior design and exploring the future of interior design. (Prerequisite: IND 3103)

IND 4052 - Building Information Modeling (BIM) II
The course builds on the principles and implementation principles learned in (BIM I), where the advanced BIM tools and applications are used in various fields such as joint cooperation in the project, lighting simulation, quantities calculation and detection of conflicts or interference. (Prerequisite: IND 3051)

IND 4104 - Critical Issues in Design
The course provides students with the opportunity to study a wide range of ideas, cultures and current issues related to the built environment. It also provides an opportunity for in-depth exploration of personal interest, a forum for brainstorming and research. It provides an excellent opportunity to synthesize a number of approaches to deal with the design problem. (Prerequisite: IND 3103)

IND 4111 - Hospitality Design
This course is concerned with the study of hospitality projects, including analysis of requirements, project programming, space planning, selection of furniture and appropriate finishes, through the anthropometric utilizing, and taking into account relevant regulations and standards. (Prerequisite: IND 3113)

IND 4162 - Psychology & Sociology Design
The student explores the psychological and social impact of design and how design can be directed to meet human needs and aspirations, and the role played by the designer in influencing the users' social behaviour, and finally its reflection in the development of design solutions. (Prerequisite: IND 2081)

LSBU London South Bank University
EST 1892

ASU جامعة العلوم التطبيقية
APPLIED SCIENCE UNIVERSITY

College of Law

Bachelor in Law

Programme Coordinator:
Dr. Qais Al-Maaitah

Office Number:
+973 16036207

Email:
qais.maaitah@asu.edu.bh

Head of Department:
Dr. Amjad Al-Nagrash

Office Number:
+973 16036127

Email:
amjad.alnagrash@asu.edu.bh

Apply Now

Enquiry

Programme Details

Final Qualification	Language of Study	Mode of Study
Bachelor in Law	Arabic	Full Time

Programme Structure

Study Period	Total Credit Hours	Number of Courses
4 Years	135 Credit Hours	45 Courses

Brief about the Programme

Join the Bachelor in Law programme to acquire the skills of legal analysis and legal drafting to serve the requirements of the local and regional market. The courses offered in the programme cover a wide and appropriate body of knowledge and application of law, its concepts and components, suitable for such a degree.

The Bachelor in Law programme has clear objectives that align with the university›s vision and mission. It is designed to achieve the knowledge and skills required to meet the needs of the labour market in the Kingdom of Bahrain and the Arabian Gulf region. The programme holds the French Hcéres accreditation, ensuring its alignment with the requirements of global law programmes.

Aims of the Programme

1. Provide the Bahraini and Gulf community with graduates capable of working at a professional level in sectors related to legal work.
2. Prepare graduates with detailed and critical knowledge in branches of law, and possessing sufficient intellectual, practical, and analytical specialised skills that qualify them to enter the labour market and contribute to serving and developing society.
3. Prepare graduates capable of using specialised skills to apply legal scientific research methods and approaches, pursue continuous education, deal with modern technologies, and are qualified to continue their postgraduate studies.
4. Prepare graduates who bear responsibility and are committed to the ethics and professional conduct of the legal profession, and who respect justice, religious, moral, and national values.

The first university in the Kingdom of Bahrain to achieve global accreditation from the British Quality Assurance Agency for Higher Education (QAA)

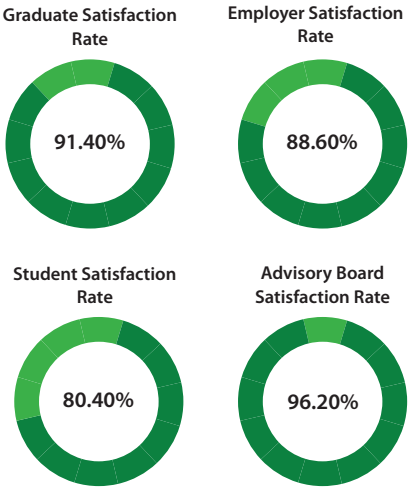
Rated 5 Stars in the QS Rating System

Ranked 30th in the QS Arab Region University Rankings 2026

Ranked 613 in the QS World University Rankings 2026

Ranked 301+ Worldwide in the Times Higher Education University Impact Rankings

General Statistics



Career Paths

1. Lawyer
2. Judge
3. Notary Public
4. Legal Researcher
5. Legal Affairs Officer
6. Arbitrator
7. Private Enforcement Officer

Entry Requirements

1. **The applicant must hold a secondary school certificate certified by the Ministry of Education in the Kingdom of Bahrain or its equivalent with a minimum grade of 70% or equivalent.**
2. **A student with a grade between 60% and 70% must successfully pass an interview examination organised by the College of Law to be admitted to the programme.**
3. **No student with a grade below 60% may be admitted under any circumstances.**
4. **All admitted students must take a mandatory English Language Placement Test determined by the university:**
   - **Students scoring between 0–40 in ENG 40 must study the English Language Remedial course (ENG 099). [NOTE: Per ASU website, should read: «Students who score between (0-40) must attend Remedial English (ENG 099). Students who score between (41-120) must attend English Language 1 (ENG101).»]**
   - **Students scoring 450 or above in TOEFL, or 5 or above in IELTS, are exempted from ENG 099.**

Study Plan

Programme Study Plan				
No.	**Course Code**	**Course Title**	**Credit Hours**	**Prerequisite**
First Year - First Semester (15 Credit Hour)				
1	ENG 101	English Language 1	3	-
2	ARB101	Arabic Language	3	-
3	HR 106	Human Rights	3	-
4	LAW 181	Introduction to Islamic Law	3	-
5	LAW 111	Introduction to Law	3	-
First Year – Second Semester (18 Credit Hour)				
1	CS 104	Computer Skills	3	-
2	HBH 105	Bahrain Civilization & History	3	-
3	---	University Elective Courses	3	-
4	ENG 102	English Language 2	3	ENG 101
5	BA 161	Introduction to Entrepreneurship	3	-
6	LAW 131	Criminology and Punishment	3	LAW 111
Second Year - First Semester (15 Credit Hour)				
1	NLAW 221	Principles of Commercial Law	3	LAW 111
2	NLAW 251	Constitutional Law 1	3	LAW 111
3	NLAW 211	Sources of Obligation	3	LAW 111
4	NLAW 231	Public Penal Law	3	LAW 131
5	NLAW 281	The Provisions of Marriage and Separation in Islam	3	LAW 181
Second Year - Second Semester (15 Credit Hour)				
1	LAW 201	Methods of Scientific & Legal Research	3	30 Hrs
2	NLAW 232	Private Penal Law - Part 1	3	NLAW 231
3	NLAW 212	Rules of Obligation	3	NLAW 211
4	NLAW 261	Public International Law	3	LAW 111
5	NLAW 252	Constitutional Law 2	3	NLAW 251
Third Year - First Semester (18 Credit Hour)				
1	NLAW 331	Private Penal Law - Part 2	3	NLAW 232
2	NLAW 311	Nominated Contracts (Sale and Rent)	3	NLAW 212
3	NLAW 381	Inheritance, Wills & Waquf	3	NLAW 281
4	NLAW 341	Administrative Law 1	3	NLAW 252
5	NLAW 312	Labor Law and Social Securities	3	NLAW 212
6	---	Programme Elective – Group (1)	3	-
Third Year - Second Semester (18 Credit Hour)				
1	NLAW 342	Administrative Law 2	3	NLAW 341
2	NLAW 332	Procedure of Criminal Law	3	NLAW 331
3	NLAW 382	Fundamentals of Islamic Jurisprudence	3	NLAW 381

4	NLAW 314	Insurance Contracts and Guarantee	3	NLAW 311
5	LAW 371	Public Finance and Taxation	3	NLAW 341
6	---	Programme Elective – Group (1)	3	-
Fourth Year - First Semester (18 Credit Hour)				
1	NLAW 411	Private International Law	3	NLAW 311
2	NLAW 432	Practical Applications in the Criminal Litigation	3	NLAW 332
3	NLAW 413	Real & Subordinate Rights	3	NLAW 311
4	NLAW 412	Civil and Commercial Code of Procedure	3	NLAW 311
5	NLAW 421	Commercial Companies and Bankruptcy Law	3	NLAW 221
6	---	Programme Elective – Group (2)	3	-
Fourth Year - Second Semester (18 Credit Hour)				
1	NLAW 441	Administrative Judicial System	3	NLAW 342
2	NLAW 414	Compulsory Execution & Evidence	3	NLAW 412
3	LAW 401	Internship	3	NLAW 332 & 90Hrs or NLAW 412 & 90 Hrs
4	NLAW 416	Practical Applications in Civil and Commercial Litigation	3	NLAW 412
5	NLAW 422	Commercial papers	3	NLAW 221
6	---	Programme Elective – Group (2)	3	-

University Compulsory Courses

ARB 101 Arabic Language
This course covers the fundamentals of the Arabic language in terms of composition, structure, vocabulary and semantics, as well as the study of its stylistic features through reading, appreciation and critical analysis, and elucidation of its aesthetic characteristics and expressive values, through texts spanning different literary genres of poetry and prose.
Prerequisite: None

ENG 101 English Language (1)
A credit course that runs for one semester of 15 weeks for 3 hours per week. Required for students of Law, Political Science, Business Administration and Art and Design programmes delivered in Arabic. Designed for learners with an OOPT score of 41 or above. Provides practice in reading, writing and note-taking at Intermediate level, including academic English and study skills.
Prerequisite: None

ENG 102 English Language (2)
A credit course that runs for one semester of 15 weeks for 3 hours per week. Required for the same programmes as ENG 101. For learners who have completed ENG 101. Provides practice at Upper Intermediate level in reading, writing and note-taking, including academic English and study skills.
Prerequisite: ENG 101

CS 104 **Computer** Skills
Covers the fundamental principles of information technology including hardware components and file management, word processing, spreadsheets, presentation software and database applications.
Prerequisite: None

HBH 105 History and Civilization of Bahrain
Covers the civilisation and history of Bahrain from pre-Islamic times through the Islamic era, European and regional ambitions from 1500–1800 CE, Portuguese conquest and subsequent regional power struggles, the settlement of Bahrain by the Utub tribe, the just rule of the Al Khalifa family and the modernisation of the state.
Prerequisite: None

HR 106 Human Rights
Covers the definition of human rights in ancient, medieval and religious contexts; legal sources of human rights in England, the American Bill of Rights, and the French Declaration; human rights at the national level in Bahrain; pre-WWI developments, the League of Nations, the UN Charter and the Universal Declaration of Human Rights; the International Covenants on Civil and Political Rights and Economic, Social and Cultural Rights; and regional instruments including the European Convention, the African Charter and the Arab Charter on Human Rights.
Prerequisite: None

BA 161 Introduction to Entrepreneurship
Covers the concept and significance of entrepreneurship, the skills needed to transform ideas into practical ventures, the legal form selection for a business, planning, organisation, marketing and financing, and case studies of leading businesses in Bahrain.
Prerequisite: None

University Elective Courses

ISL 101 Islamic Culture
Introduces the concept and characteristics of Islamic culture, its sources and role in forming Islamic identity, and addresses cultural invasion and means of countering it through faith, knowledge and excellence.
Prerequisite: None

ISL 102 Ethics in Islam
Covers the place of ethics and conduct in Islam, professional ethics in the modern era compared with Islamic history and civilisation, and means of cultivating professional ethics.
Prerequisite: None

ISL 103 Islam and Contemporary Issues
Covers jurisprudential rules for dealing with contemporary issues, extremism and excommunication, astronomical calculation for lunar months, zakat on jewellery and paper money, Islamic governance and democracy, cloning, organ transplantation and abortion.
Prerequisite: None

LIB 101 Introduction to Library Science
Introduces the fields of library science, information systems, library types and functions, history of libraries, Islamic library heritage, library staff roles, sources of information and technical operations.
Prerequisite: None

MAN 101 Man and Environment
Covers the concept of natural vs. built environment, the impact of urbanisation on the environment (congestion, heat, pollution, noise), the role of family, science and media in environmental protection, and depletion of natural resources.
Prerequisite: None

SOC 101 Introduction to Sociology
Covers the concept and evolution of sociology, its methods and theories, social phenomena, institutional roles, globalisation, and the interaction between the individual and the group.
Prerequisite: None

SPT 101 Special Topics
Introduces contemporary topics contributing to scientific, social, ethical or economic culture, aimed at developing students' knowledge and skills during and after their studies.
Prerequisite: None

CS 205 Computer Applications
Covers word processing for report writing, spreadsheets for basic accounting systems, database applications for elementary information system design.
Prerequisite: CS 104

LFS 102 Thinking and Communication Skills Development
Covers the concept of thinking, creative and critical thinking, fact vs. opinion, problem-solving, communication skills, influence and persuasion, listening, presentation, resume writing and interview preparation.
Prerequisite: None

Programme Compulsory Courses

LAW 111 Introduction to Law
Covers two main parts: (1) Theory of Law — the nature, objectives, branches, sources and scope of law; and (2) Theory of Rights — the definition, types, elements, sources, subject matter and protection of rights.
Prerequisite: None

LAW 131 Criminology and Penology
Covers the study of crime, the criminal, research methods in criminology, theories of criminal behaviour, concepts of penology, types of penalties and precautionary measures, and major penal institutions.
Prerequisite: LAW 111

LAW 201 Legal and Scientific Research Methods
Provides an overview of legal research and its methodology, from topic selection through source collection, critical reading, legal writing, to publication and defence.
Prerequisite: 30 Credit Hours

NLAW 221 Principles of Commercial Law (taught in English)
An introductory course addressing principles of Commercial Law, their emergence and development, definition and scope, commercial register searches, avoidance of illegal competition, and various types of commercial contracts.
Prerequisite: LAW 111

NLAW 251 Constitutional Law (1)
Covers the state and its elements, characteristics, emergence and types; the rule of law and its applications in the Bahraini constitution; government types, electoral systems, separation of powers, contemporary political systems, and the Bahraini political system; and the general principles of constitutional law.
Prerequisite: LAW 111

NLAW 261 Public International Law (taught in English)
Covers the main concepts, theories and principles of Public International Law, its nature, sources, relationship with domestic law, essential elements of statehood, international recognition, international treaties and the Law of the Sea.
Prerequisite: LAW 111

NLAW 341 Administrative Law (1)
Covers the definition, origins, characteristics and sources of administrative law; the basis of administrative organisation and its methods; administrative activity, administrative police and public utilities.
Prerequisite: NLAW 252

LAW 181 Introduction to Islamic Law
Covers the legal situation of the Arabs before Islam compared with Islamic law, the definition and characteristics of Islamic jurisprudence and Sharia, the general and specific jurisprudential rules, historical stages of Islamic legislation, primary and secondary sources of Islamic law, and property and contract types.
Prerequisite: None

NLAW 211 Sources of Obligation
Covers the sources of obligation in Bahraini civil law: voluntary sources (the contract — formation, validity, interpretation and effects; unilateral will; promise of reward); and involuntary sources (unlawful act — personal liability, vicarious liability, liability arising from things; unjust enrichment; quasi-contract; law as a direct source).
Prerequisite: LAW 111

NLAW 212 Rules of Obligation
Covers the execution of obligations (voluntary and compulsory specific performance; damages), modifying factors (conditions, terms, multiple objects, multiple parties), assignment (of rights and debts), and extinction of obligations (performance, equivalent, novation, set-off, merger, release, impossibility, prescription).
Prerequisite: NLAW 211

NLAW 231 General Criminal Law
Covers the definition, objectives and evolution of criminal law; the concept and types of crime; elements of criminal liability; participation; grounds for justification; and the theory of criminal sanctions (penalties and precautionary measures).
Prerequisite: LAW 131

NLAW 232 Criminal Law – Special Part (1)
An advanced study of crimes against human life (homicide in all forms with aggravating and mitigating circumstances), crimes against physical integrity (assault), and crimes against public morality and honour (adultery, rape, indecent assault, and defamation).
Prerequisite: NLAW 231

NLAW 252 Constitutional Law (2)
Covers the constitutional system of Bahrain through its historical evolution; formation and functions of the executive, legislative and judicial branches; constitutional rights, freedoms and duties; separation of powers; the relationship between the legislative and executive branches; and judicial review of laws.
Prerequisite: NLAW 251

NLAW 281 Rules of Marriage and Divorce in Islam
Covers the definition, formation, legitimacy, types and rights of the marriage contract, and the different forms and methods of marital dissolution.
Prerequisite: LAW 181

NLAW 311 Nominate Contracts: Sale and Lease
Part 1 (Sale Contract): covers the definition, characteristics, formation, effects, rights and obligations of both parties, and special types of sale. Part 2 (Lease Contract): covers the nature, formation, proof, effects, rights and obligations of both parties, and special types of lease.
Prerequisite: NLAW 212

NLAW 312 Labour Law and Social Insurance
Covers the general principles of labour law (definition, history, international regulation, sources and scope), the individual employment contract, collective labour relations (collective agreements, trade unions, dispute settlement), and the Bahraini social insurance system (old-age, disability, death, work injuries and financing).
Prerequisite: NLAW 212

NLAW 314 Insurance and Guarantee Contracts
Part 1 (Insurance Contract): covers the meaning, characteristics, types and legal rules of insurance, conclusion methods, the insurance policy, parties' obligations, and extinction. Part 2 (Guarantee Contract): covers the definition, characteristics, elements, effects and extinction of the guarantee.
Prerequisite: NLAW 311

NLAW 331 Criminal Law – Special Part (2)
An advanced study of crimes against public duties (bribery, embezzlement, harm to public funds), crimes against public trust (currency counterfeiting, document forgery), and crimes against property (theft, fraud, breach of trust).
Prerequisite: NLAW 232

NLAW 332 Criminal Procedure Law
Covers the definition of criminal procedure law, public action (parties, initiation, conditions, extinction), rules of jurisdiction and nullity, evidence, pre-trial investigation stages, the trial, criminal judgments and methods of appeal.
Prerequisite: NLAW 331

NLAW 342 Administrative Law (2)
Covers administrative decisions (definition, elements, classification, implementation and termination), administrative contracts (definition, formation, types, administrative authority and

contractor obligations), public servants (definition in Bahrain, conditions of appointment, duties, rights and termination of service), and public property (nature, characteristics, use and protection).
Prerequisite: NLAW 341

LAW 371 Public Finance and Tax Legislation
Covers the state's financial activity, sources of revenue and patterns of expenditure within Bahraini and comparative legislation; the definition, development and relationship of public finance to other sciences; public expenditure; the general budget (preparation, approval, execution and oversight); and main sources of public revenue including taxes and public debt.
Prerequisite: NLAW 341

NLAW 381 Inheritance, Bequests and Endowments
Covers the rules, causes, conditions and types of inheritance, bequests and endowments, and the distribution of estates.
Prerequisite: NLAW 281

NLAW 382 Islamic Jurisprudence — Usul al-Fiqh
Covers the definition of the science of Islamic jurisprudential theory, the legal rulings (obligatory and situational), linguistic and jurisprudential principles, abrogation and ijtihad.
Prerequisite: NLAW 381

LAW 401 Practical Training
Places students in a legal department to translate theoretical knowledge into practical experience — observing civil, commercial and criminal case handling, developing skills in dealing with clients, courts and adversaries, and preparing a training report.
Prerequisite: 90 Cr Hrs including NLAW 332 or NLAW 412

NLAW 411 Private International Law
Covers the definition and sources of Private International Law; conflict of laws rules; classification and referral; obstacles to applying foreign law; assignment rules in personal status, property, contractual obligations and tort; international jurisdictional conflict; Bahraini court jurisdiction; enforcement of foreign judgments and arbitral awards.
Prerequisite: NLAW 311

NLAW 412 Civil and Commercial Procedure
Covers the definition, development and sources of civil and commercial procedure; judicial organisation (court composition, degrees of litigation); rules of jurisdiction; theory of action; litigation proceedings; judgments; and methods of challenge.
Prerequisite: NLAW 311

NLAW 413 Real Rights (Principal and Accessory)
Part 1: principal real rights — right of ownership, usufruct, use, habitation and easements (concept, acquisition, protection and extinction). Part 2: accessory rights — mortgage, possessory pledge and privileges (concept, creation, effects and extinction).
Prerequisite: NLAW 311

NLAW 414 Compulsory Execution and Evidence
Part 1 (Evidence): covers the nature and importance of proof, the burden of proof, and methods of evidence (writing, testimony, presumptions, res judicata, confession, examination of parties, oath and expert opinion). Part 2 (Execution): covers compulsory execution — enforcement authority, elements, execution against movable and immovable assets, and distribution of proceeds.
Prerequisite: NLAW 412

NLAW 416 Practical Applications in Civil and Commercial Litigation
Covers the theoretical principles of evidence and civil procedure as a foundation for practical exercises in case analysis, preparation of pleading briefs at first instance, appellate and cassation levels, court advocacy techniques, case applications involving sale, lease, insurance and possession, and international jurisdiction of Bahraini courts.
Prerequisite: NLAW 412

NLAW 421 Commercial Companies and Bankruptcy
Covers the definition, importance and characteristics of commercial companies; general provisions (substantive and formal elements, winding up and liquidation); provisions for partnerships, limited partnerships, joint ventures, public and private joint-stock companies, and limited liability companies; and bankruptcy (definition, characteristics, conditions for declaration, effects and termination).
Prerequisite: NLAW 221

NLAW 422 Commercial Papers
Covers the characteristics and functions of commercial papers; types (bills of exchange — creation, acceptance, payment, endorsement; promissory notes; cheques); and their distinctions from securities and currency.
Prerequisite: NLAW 221

NLAW 432 Practical Applications in Criminal Litigation
Covers legislative drafting principles, legal writing, judicial and police practice, principles of advocacy, and practical exercises in criminal judicial work through mock trials and preparation of legal documents.
Prerequisite: NLAW 332

NLAW 441 Administrative Judiciary
Covers the principle of legality, balancing theories (discretionary authority, necessity, acts of sovereignty), judicial review systems, the Bahraini judicial system, and the annulment action (definition, conditions, grounds and execution).
Prerequisite: NLAW 342

NLAW 301 Professional Ethics and Professional Responsibility
Part 1: Ethics of legal professions — the ethics of judges, lawyers and public prosecutors, ethical rules for each legal profession. Part 2: Professional liability — legal responsibility of lawyers, judges, clerks, process servers, experts and notaries, with legal provisions.
Prerequisite: NLAW 212

Programme Elective Courses

NLAW 313 History of Law
Covers the origins of legal rules in primitive societies, and major ancient codifications that influenced contemporary positive law, including laws from Mesopotamia (Lipit-Ishtar, Eshnunna, Hammurabi). Also covers Roman law from its origins through its sources and key provisions.
Prerequisite: LAW 111

NLAW 333 National Security Crimes
An advanced study of crimes threatening national security (internal and external), including crimes against state sovereignty, disclosure of secrets, hostile acts against a foreign state, contracting with an enemy state, wilful sabotage, attacks on the King or Crown Prince, the constitution, public order, authority and obstruction of government orders.
Prerequisite: NLAW 231

NLAW 334 Economic and Electronic Crimes
An advanced study of the legal texts governing economic and electronic crimes (information theft, illegal use of credit cards, document forgery, illegal electronic fund transfers, money laundering and terrorism financing).
Prerequisite: NLAW 331

NLAW 362 International Humanitarian Law
Covers the concept, origins, evolution and Islamic perspective of IHL; its principles, legal nature, sources and foundations; its relationship with international human rights law; and its material, personal and substantive scope (international and non-international armed conflicts, protection of civilians and the wounded).
Prerequisite: NLAW 261

NLAW 372 Principles of Economics
Covers micro and macroeconomic concepts: the economic problem, supply and demand, consumer behaviour, production, markets, national income, consumption, savings, investment, monetary policy, banking and key economic problems (inflation, recession, stagflation).
Prerequisite: LAW 111

NLAW 415 Intellectual Property
Covers the concept and types of intellectual property rights, copyright (definition, conditions, moral and financial rights), neighbouring rights, patents, industrial designs, computer programs, trademarks and trade names, including registration, ownership and protection.
Prerequisite: NLAW 212

NLAW 417 Nationality and Aliens Law
Part 1: The general theory of nationality — types, acquisition, loss and recovery in comparative law, and the Bahraini Nationality Act 1963 and its amendments. Part 2: Status of aliens — rights and obligations of foreigners in Bahrain and entry procedures.
Prerequisite: NLAW 411

LAW 424 E-Commerce Law (taught in English)
Introduces International Commercial Law, standardisation methods, sources, International Commercial Contracts, the UN Convention on the International Sale of Goods (Vienna Convention) and commercial arbitration.
Prerequisite: NLAW 311

NLAW 425 Maritime Law
Covers the origins and scope of maritime law, the vessel as a tool of navigation, persons involved in maritime navigation, vessel exploitation, and marine insurance.
Prerequisite: NLAW 221

NLAW 427 Arbitration in Civil and Commercial Matters
Covers arbitration as a dispute resolution method (forms and types), the arbitration agreement (elements and validity), commencement and conduct of arbitration proceedings, the arbitral award (form, content and effects), and enforcement.
Prerequisite: NLAW 412

NLAW 451 Constitutional Judiciary
Covers judicial review of constitutionality (political and judicial forms), grounds for challenging unconstitutional laws, judicial review in comparative constitutional systems, the Bahraini Constitutional Court (composition, jurisdiction, procedures and effects of unconstitutionality rulings).
Prerequisite: NLAW 252

LSBU London South Bank University
EST 1892

ASU جامعة العلوم التطبيقية
APPLIED SCIENCE UNIVERSITY

London South Bank University Programmes

Scholarships Up To

35%

LSBU London South Bank University
EST 1892

ASU جامعة العلوم التطبيقية
APPLIED SCIENCE UNIVERSITY

College of Engineering

BEng (Hons) Architectural Engineering

Programme Coordinator:
Dr. Ali Sedki

Office Number:
+973 16036348

Email:
ali.ali@asu.edu.bh

Head of Department:
Dr. Rouya Hdeib

Office Number:
+973 16036151

Email:
rouya.hdeib @asu.edu.bh

Apply Now

Enquiry

Programme Details

Final Qualification	Language of Study	Mode of Study
BEng (Hons)	English	Full Time

Programme Structure

Study Period	Total Credit Hours	Number of Courses
4 Years	150 Credit Hours	49 Courses

Brief about the Programme

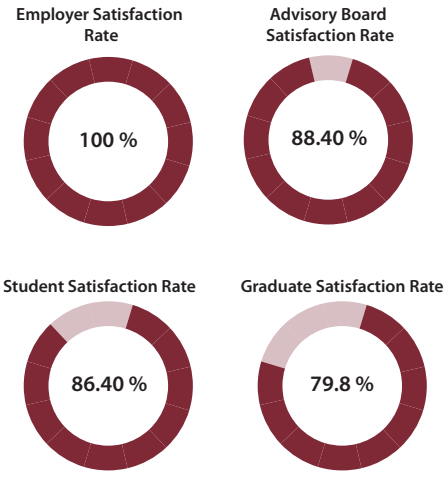
This programme is intended for undergraduate students who wish to study the discipline of Architectural Engineering to Honours degree level and who may wish to achieve professional status later.

This programme is designed to embrace developments in the industry, in particular the Engineering Council UK (ECUK) Standard for Professional Engineering Competence (UK-SPEC). The programme leads to a dual award from Applied Science University (ASU Bahrain) and London South Bank University (LSBU-UK).

Aims of the Programme

1. Produce graduates committed to careers in the architectural engineering industry, with opportunities to work with a range of employers in various countries.
2. Equip graduates for postgraduate study and professional employment in architectural engineering, enabling them to become lifelong learners who recognise the societal value of the discipline.
3. Develop graduates with a strong breadth and depth of knowledge and understanding of key aspects of architectural engineering.
4. Enable graduates to acquire analytical, problem-solving, and subject-specific skills, and to develop the ability to evaluate evidence, arguments, and assumptions, reach sound judgments, and communicate effectively.
5. Provide graduates with the necessary academic qualification to enter advanced postgraduate studies as well as providing the necessary educational base to become a Chartered Engineer.

General Statistics



The first university in the Kingdom of Bahrain to achieve global accreditation from the British Quality Assurance Agency for Higher Education (QAA)

Rated 5 Stars in the QS Rating System

Ranked 30th in the QS Arab Region University Rankings 2026

Ranked 613 in the QS World University Rankings 2026

Ranked 301+ Worldwide in the Times Higher Education University Impact Rankings

Career Paths

1. Architectural Engineer
2. Structural Engineer
3. Building Services Engineer
4. BIM Specialist
5. Construction Project Manager
6. Sustainable Design Consultant
7. Urban Development Engineer
8. Design & Planning Engineer
9. Environmental Building Consultant
10. Facility Design Engineer

Entry Requirements

Foundation Level / Year 1

A Bahraini or GCC Secondary School (Scientific) Certificate with a minimum of 65% GPA* and 60% in Mathematics and 60% in English language or equivalent. Candidates with a lower GPA may also be admitted, subject to a satisfactory interview by the College.

IELTS Test Score of 4.5 or equivalent.

Direct Entry to Level 4 Year 2

Foundation Year Completion Certificate, or equivalent international qualifications which may typically include:

Advanced Level (A-Level) – BCC or equivalent in UCAS points including Mathematics and preferably a Science in either Chemistry or Physics

International Baccalaureate- IB 29 points

CBSE minimum of 65% with 70% in English

IELTS Test Score of 6.0 or equivalent.

Study Plan

Year	Semester 1	Module Codes	Credit Hours	Semester 2	Module Codes	Credit Hours	Level	
1	Engineering Science 1	ASU_S_ES1	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Engineering Science 2	ASU_S_ES2	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	S	Core
	Intermediate English	ASU_S_IEN	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Advanced English	ASU_S_AEN	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	S	Core
	Mathematics 1	ASU_S_MA1	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Mathematics 2	ASU_S_MA2	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	S	Core
	Principles of Engineering	ASU_S_POE	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Constructing the Built Environment	ASU_S_CBE	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	S	Core
	Laboratory and Workshop Skills	ASU_S_LWS	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Study Skills and Professional Practice	ASU_S_SSP	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	S	Core
				Computer Programming for Engineering	ASU_S_CPE	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	S	Core
Summer	Human Rights				ASU_S_HUR	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	S	Core
	Bahrain Civilisation and History				ASU_S_BCH	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	S	HEC req.
	Arabic Language				ASU_S_ALA	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	S	HEC req.
	Arabic Language for Non-Arabic Speakers				ASU_S_ALN			
Total			**50**			**90**		**140**
2	Engineering Practice and Design 1	ASU_4_EP1	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Engineering Practice and Design 2	ASU_4_EP2	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	4	Core
	Engineering Mathematics 1	ASU_4_EM1	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Engineering Mathematics 2	ASU_4_EM2	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	4	Core
	Integrated Design and Construction	ASU_4_IDC	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Building Technology	ASU_4_BDT	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	4	Core
	Architectural Engineering Design and Structures 1	ASU_4_AE1	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Architectural Engineering Design and Structures 2	ASU_4_AE2	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	4	Core
	Principles of Engineering Science 1	ASU_4_PE1	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Principles of Engineering Science 2	ASU_4_PE2	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	4	Core
	CAD Graphics	ASU_4_CAD	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Building Environment Simulation and Analysis	ASU_4_BSA	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	4	Core
Total			**60**			**60**		**120**
3	Structural Design 1	ASU_5_SD1	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Structural Design 2	ASU_5_SD2	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	5	Core
	Advanced Engineering Mathematics	ASU_5_AEM	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Building Information Modelling	ASU_5_BIM	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	5	Core
	Geotechnics 1	ASU_5_GT1	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Engineering Ethics	ASU_5_EET	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	5	Core
	Design Procedures for Architecture 1	ASU_5_DA1	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Design Procedures for Architecture 2	ASU_5_DA2	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	5	Core
	AutoCAD-3D	ASU_5_A3D	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Architectural Engineering Field Studies	ASU_5_AFS	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	5	Core
	Engineering Management and Economics	ASU_5_EME	3 hrs. (10 CAT)					
Summer	Internship				ASU_5_ITS	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	5	Core
Total			**60**			**60**		**120**
4	Project 1	ASU_6_PR1	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Project 2	ASU_6_PR2	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	6	Core
	Structural Design and Analysis 1	ASU_6_SA1	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Structural Design and Analysis 2	ASU_6_SA2	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	6	Core
	Engineering Research Methods	ASU_6_ERM	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Geotechnics 2	ASU_6_GT2	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	6	Core
	Energy Conservation in Buildings	ASU_6_ECB	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Innovation, Enterprise and Management	ASU_6_IEM	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	6	Core
	Thermodynamics for Buildings	ASU_6_TDB	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Design project	ASU_6_DPR	6 hrs. (20 CAT)	6	Core
	Forensic Engineering and Conservation	ASU_6_FEC	3 hrs. (10 CAT)					
Total			**60**			**60**		**120**
Total 150 credit hours including HEC requirements								

Mathematics 1 (ASU_S_MA1)

The module is designed to provide students with the mathematical knowledge and skills to support their engineering study and the requirement for entry into the BEng programmes at ASU. Therefore, it is a preparatory or foundation module building on the knowledge obtained at school.

Intermediate English (ASU_S_IEN)

A 10 CAT module, which runs for one semester of 15 weeks for three hours per week. It is the first credit English module that ASU undergraduate students are required to take. The module provides intensive practice in upper-intermediate reading, oral presentations, writing, and note taking. Academic and study skills are embedded in the module. The module develops students' English language and analytical skills to pursue a more advanced ASU academic English module and cope with the literacy demands of specialised modules taught in English.

Principles of Engineering (ASU_S_POE)

The module develops the students' understanding of essential scientific principles for studying engineering to the degree level. It is designed to be accessible to students with a wide range of prior science specialisations. The module comprises two blocks of study. These blocks are common to all engineering disciplines and introduce the principles of measurement systems and units, thermal physics, mechanical and electrical principles, and engineering materials and their properties.

Study Skills and Professional Practice (ASU_S_SSP)

This module introduces both study and professional skills and practice.

The module introduces study skills considering both individual and team-working skills; it covers exam preparation, revision and question answering techniques. It introduces students to their own Personal Development Planning processes.

It also enables students to develop and use appropriate safe working practices as expected in an engineering and industrial environment.

Engineering Science 1 (ASU_S_ES1)

This module covers scientific principles of physics and chemistry at a level between secondary school level and Advanced Level. It serves as a preparatory module for students intending to undertake engineering undergraduate degree programmes at the University and introduces students to a range of skills required for the study of engineering.

Laboratory and Workshop Skills (ASU_S_LWS)

This module is a mixture of workshop exercises and practical experiments and projects. Students work in small groups of 2–5 people, depending on the task. The module also provides students with an introduction to design skills and basic engineering drawing.

Engineering Science 2 (ASU_S_ES2)

This module is aimed at extending the science knowledge of engineering students in preparation for continuing their respective engineering degrees. It covers general applied physical principles, including dynamics, statics, fluids, heat and energy.

Computer Programming for Engineering (ASU_S_CPE)

This module introduces students to concepts of programming. This includes conditional, iterations and block structure. Structured programming and data types will also be introduced and illustrated on typical and simple engineering problems.

Mathematics 2 (ASU_S_MA2)

The module is designed to provide students with the mathematical knowledge and skills necessary for transition to Level 4 study of engineering subjects. Students will attend lectures and tutorials where mathematical exercises are undertaken. Where possible, the statistical content will introduce the use of statistical packages and the presentation of real-life data sets. All students will keep a logbook of the problems tackled.

Besides the 36 contact hours, students are encouraged to spend some time on their own to practise the mathematical concepts they learn during the lectures and solve extra problems.

Constructing the Built Environment (ASU_S_CBE)

This module introduces students to design principles and processes specific to constructing the built environment. It will explore traditional and modern construction methods, and students will understand how new methods and materials can sustain the built environment.

Advanced English (ASU_S_AEN)

A 10 CAT module, which runs for one semester of 15 weeks for three hours per week. It is the second credit English module that ASU undergraduate students are required to take. The module provides intensive practice in advanced level reading, oral presentations, writing, and listening. Academic and study skills are embedded in the module. This module aims to enhance students' English and analytical skills as a prerequisite for academic and professional success.

Human Rights (ASU_S_HUR)

This module deals with the basic principles of human rights in terms of the definition of human rights and its scope and source, focusing on the provisions of the international law of human rights, which include the following international documents:

a. Charter of the United Nations
b. The Universal Declaration of Human Rights
c. The International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights
d. The International Covenant on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights
e. Convention against Torture and Cruel, Inhumane Punishments.
f. Protection Mechanisms and Constitutional Organisation of Public Rights and
g. Freedom in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Bahrain Civilisation and History (ASU_S_BCH)

The aim of the module is to highlight the role of the Kingdom of Bahrain in its local, regional and international levels through various historical eras, beginning with the Old Ages through the Islamic era to the modern era. The module demonstrates the Arab and Islamic identity of the Kingdom of Bahrain and the vital role they play politically and culturally.

Arabic Language (ASU_S_ALA)

The module runs for one semester of 7 weeks (Summer Semester). The module provides intensive practice in reading, oral presentations, writing, and note taking.

Arabic Language for Non-Arabic Speakers (ASU_S_ALN)

The module runs for one semester of 7 weeks (Summer Semester). This Arabic module is required to be taken by non-Arabic speaking students in ASU undergraduate Engineering programmes. The module provides intensive practice for beginners in reading, oral presentations, writing, and note taking.

Engineering Practice and Design 1 (ASU_4_EP1)

This module introduces engineering practice and design. Design activities, sustainable design principles, and transferable skills will be considered.

Engineering Mathematics 1 (ASU_4_EM1)

This module consolidates the mathematical skills that underpin the BEng engineering degrees.

Architectural Engineering Design and Structures 1 (ASU_4_AE1)

This module focuses on the principles and elements of design. The module explains the fundamentals of the design process as an introduction to Architectural Design Engineering. Students are introduced to the principles and elements of design through a series of individual and group design activities through which they experience the implementation of different design elements and learn about different principles of design. This module gives students a chance to understand and experiment with 2D and 3D compositions with specific design values and simple structures, which will be taken forward in the second part of this module, Architectural Engineering Design and Structures 2.

Principles of Engineering Science 1 (ASU_4_PE1)

This module develops the students' understanding of essential scientific principles for the study of engineering to the degree level. It is designed to be accessible to students with a wide range of prior science specialisations.

This module develops the students' understanding of methods for quantifying the forces between bodies. Forces that are responsible for maintaining equilibrium. This module is common to all engineering disciplines and introduces the principles of measurement systems, force and moment vector and traditional analysis, and forces in equilibrium.

CAD Graphics (ASU_4_CAD)

Topics include intermediate CAD operations, editing drawings, constructing multi-view drawings, applying text, font, style commands, dimensioning, hatching, blocks, constructing 3D objects and modifying solid objects.

Integrated Design and Construction (ASU_4_IDC)

The module provides insight into the design and construction processes based on integration. It is designed specifically to provide an overview of design and construction management skills, competencies and tasks.

Engineering Practice and Design 2 (ASU_4_EP2)

The module covers practical work, project management, health and safety and risk management, and transferable skills.

Engineering Mathematics 2 (ASU_4_EM2)

This module consolidates the mathematical skills that underpin the BEng engineering degrees.

Architectural Engineering Design and Structures 2 (ASU_4_AE2)

The aims of this module are to understand the relationship between the building architectural form; simple structure types, and materials; present simple environmental issues which should be considered during the design and construction of buildings; and apply these issues to an architectural design problem; resolution of structural issues, functional requirements, and form generation in one to two-storey buildings.

Principles of Engineering Science 2 (ASU_4_PE2)

This module develops the students' understanding of essential scientific principles for studying engineering to the degree level. It is designed to be accessible to students with a wide range of prior science specialisations. The module comprises two blocks of study. These blocks are common to all engineering disciplines and introduce mechanical and electrical principles and engineering materials and their properties.

Building Technology (ASU_4_BDT)

Building services engineers are responsible for designing, installing, operating and monitoring the mechanical, electrical and public health systems required for the safe, comfortable and environmentally friendly operation of modern buildings. This module covers all of these services and their management.

Building Environment Simulation and Analysis (ASU_4_BSA)

This module aims to provide a general understanding and practical experience in computer modelling software systems for simulating and predicting the environmental performance of buildings. A theoretical explanation of the processes simulated in the computer models, such as heat transfer, airflow and lighting, is followed by a description of individual software packages and practical workshops using each package.

Structural Design 1 (ASU_5_SD1)

Introduction to stress and deformation of basic structural materials subjected to axial, torsional, bending, and pressure loads. Plane stress, plane strain, and stress-strain laws. Applications of stress and deformation analysis to members subjected to centric, torsional, flexural, and combined loading. Introduction to theories of failure.

Advanced Engineering Mathematics (ASU_5_AEM)

This module covers advanced undergraduate engineering mathematics.

Geotechnics 1 (ASU_5_GT1)

This module introduces to the students a number of simple concepts and models, which are used to describe soil and its mechanical behaviour. Standard laboratory tests are carried out, and soil properties are derived from the results.

Design Procedures for Architecture 1 (ASU_5_DA1)

Personal student architectural design project embracing design studio and technology studio against a defined brief.

AutoCAD-3D (ASU_5_A3D)

The module covers key command revision, 3D viewing, viewports and coordinate systems, wire-frame modelling, surface modelling and meshing, solid modelling, studio effects, materials and lighting, and Boolean operators.

Engineering Management and Economics (ASU_5_EME)

This module helps to prepare students for their future roles as professional engineers in a number of ways. It includes:

- detailed study of project planning techniques, including network techniques, with preparation for the student's individual projects
- an overview of the business functions which interact with engineering
- an introduction to Systems Thinking. A formal method for studying systems will be introduced.
- an introduction to recruitment, retention and equal opportunities in employment
- the use of published Standards in engineering
- use of the BSI website to access national and international standards
- an introduction to statistics and their use in managing engineering processes
- an introduction to Quality Management, with particular reference to the ISO 9000 series
- an introduction to European Directives and harmonised standards
- writing technical business reports, including the importance of acknowledging published sources and the use of formal methods for doing so.

Structural Design 2 (ASU_5_SD2)

This module develops students' practice with structural engineering, introduces structural concepts, and provides an overview of specific techniques for analysing determinate structures, trusses, beams, and frames.

Building Information Modelling (ASU_5_BIM)

This module introduces the concepts of Building Information Modelling (BIM) through the development of architectural 3D models on industry-standard parametric CAD systems. It covers the practical competence of architectural modelling and provides exposure to coordinating building information models.

Engineering Ethics (ASU_5_EET)

This module introduces the theory and the practice of engineering ethics using a multi-disciplinary and cross-cultural approach. The theory includes ethics and the philosophy of engineering. Historical cases are taken primarily from the scholarly literature on engineering ethics, and hypothetical cases are written by students. Each student will write a story by selecting an ancestor or mythic hero as a substitute for a character in a historical case. Students will compare these cases and recommend action.

Design Procedures for Architecture 2 (ASU_5_DA2)

Personal student architectural design project embracing design studio and technology studio against a defined brief.

Architectural Engineering Field Studies (ASU_5_AFS)

This is substantially a project-based learning module. It seeks to bring together construction and materials needed for design, surveying for execution, and some geology. It emphasises the link between materials and site geological properties and their relationship with design and execution. There will be a block week devoted to a construction-type activity and others, including geological and site visits. Multimedia support will feature in the delivery.

Internship (ASU_5_ITS)

This module provides the students with an opportunity to experience the industrial world and be part of a team working on real-world projects. The University assists each student in finding the most suitable industry.

Project 1 (ASU_6_PR1)

To plan, execute, review and report upon a piece of project work related to the BEng programme being followed by the student. A Module Guide for the project is augmented by four lectures.

Structural Design and Analysis 1 (ASU_6_SA1)

This module offers the knowledge and skills of reinforced concrete design to Eurocodes, analysis of structural form and the ability to design in both qualitative and quantitative directions.

Engineering Research Methods (ASU_6_ERM)

The module studies the scope and significance of engineering research. It introduces students to the various aspects of engineering research; its types, tools and methods and students will learn how to apply research techniques to real-world situations. The module covers topics such as the identification of a topic by the student, proposition of hypothesis, formulation of research inquiries, development of literature review, and select research design and methodologies. Additionally, students will learn data collection techniques; primary and secondary data with application to specific problems, scaling and research instrument design and sampling design.

Energy Conservation in Building (ASU_6_ECB)

This module will provide students with the ability to quantify the energy available from the sun, wind, sea or river, or earth for a given application at a given site. Students will develop the skills to understand and analyse the potential and limitations of the available energy conversion devices and exercise basic engineering judgment in their application.

Thermodynamics for Buildings (ASU_6_TDB)

This module provides students with relevant the principles of heat transfer, fluid flow and thermodynamics for application to buildings and their engineering systems.

Forensic Engineering and Conservation (ASU_6_FEC)

This module uses mainly case studies to develop the principles design by looking at the influence of failures on the evolution of the professional practice. It teaches students an understanding of holistic design applications, conservation, and the role of regulations. It teaches, develops and assesses observational, deductive, creative and communications skills.

Project 2 (ASU_6_PR2)

To plan, execute, review and report upon a piece of project work related to the BEng programme being followed by the student. A Module Guide for the project is augmented by four lectures.

Structural Design and Analysis 2 (ASU_6_SA2)

This module offers the knowledge and skills of steel design to Eurocodes, analysis of structural form and the ability to design in both qualitative and quantitative directions.

Geotechnics 2 (ASU_6_GT2)

This module is intended to provide an understanding of the application of theory to the analysis and design of geotechnical structures.

Innovation, Enterprise and Management (ASU_6_IEM)

The module is intended to be practical, with students developing some appropriate ideas of their own in such a way that they become practical, profitable propositions. Students will practice ways of finding ideas, testing those ideas and developing them, and will write their own business strategies, risk assessments and scenario testing so that they demonstrate the commercial viability of their ideas. One of the assignments will require students – to work in groups, typically to adopt a concept and develop it such that it could be commercially viable and sustainable. This might be a product or a service (such as consultancy or contract management).

Students will experience topics addressing intellectual property, market research, market placement, advertising and finance. They will be expected to reflect on what they can contribute to a group.

Design Project (ASU_6_DPR)

Main architectural design project embracing design studio and technology studio against a defined brief.

BEng (Hons) Civil Engineering

LSBU London South Bank University

ASU جامعة العلوم التطبيقية APPLIED SCIENCE UNIVERSITY

Programme Coordinator:
Dr. Hamdy Alsayed

Office Number:
+973 16036158

Email:
hamdy.mohamed@asu.edu.bh

Head of Department:
Dr. Rouya Hdeib

Office Number:
+973 16036151

Email:
rouya.hdeib @asu.edu.bh

Apply Now

Enquiry

Programme Details

Final Qualification	Language of Study	Mode of Study
BEng (Hons)	English	Full Time

Programme Structure

Study Period	Total Credit Hours	Number of Courses
4 Years	150 Credit Hours	49 Courses

Brief about the Programme

CIOB The Chartered Institute of Building

This programme is intended for undergraduate students who wish to study the discipline of Civil Engineering to Honours degree level and who may wish to achieve professional status later. This programme is designed to embrace developments in the industry, in particular the Engineering Council UK (ECUK) Standard for Professional Engineering Competence (UK-SPEC). The curriculum emphasises the development of traditional engineering numerical strengths coupled with an enquiring creative approach as required by employers. This degree will give students a solid foundation for entering the industry equipped with the necessary skills required to excel in a competitive environment. The programme leads to a dual award from Applied Science University (ASU Bahrain) and London South Bank University (LSBU-UK).

Aims of the Programme

1. Empower graduates to pursue global careers in civil engineering by fostering a commitment to professional excellence and adaptability within diverse international environments.
2. Equip graduates who are equipped for postgraduate study and prepare them to take up responsible professional employment in the construction industry. Graduates will also become lifelong learners who appreciate the value of a civil engineering education to society.
3. Empower graduate with a breadth and depth of knowledge and understanding of the key aspects of civil engineering.
4. Foster the acquisition of advanced analytical, problem-solving, and subject-specific skills. In addition, enable them to develop the ability to evaluate evidence, arguments, and assumptions, reach sound judgements, and communicate effectively.
5. Provide graduates with the necessary academic qualification to enter advanced postgraduate studies as well as providing the necessary educational base to become a Chartered Engineer.

The first university in the Kingdom of Bahrain to achieve global accreditation from the British Quality Assurance Agency for Higher Education (QAA)

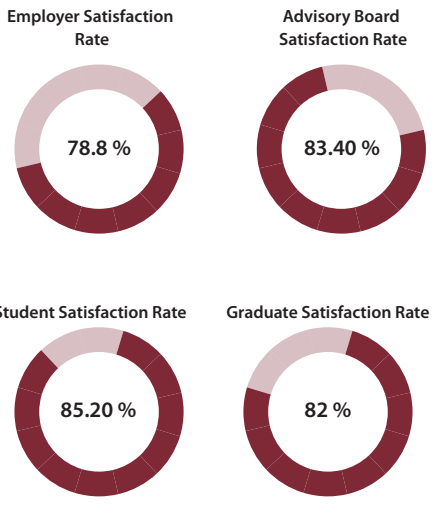
Rated 5 Stars in the QS Rating System

Ranked 30th in the QS Arab Region University Rankings 2026

Ranked 613 in the QS World University Rankings 2026

Ranked 301+ Worldwide in the Times Higher Education University Impact Rankings

General Statistics



Career Paths

1. Civil Engineer
2. Structural Engineer
3. Project Engineer
4. Site Engineer
5. Transportation Engineer
6. Water Resources Engineer
7. Environmental Engineer
8. Construction Manager
9. Geotechnical Engineer
10. Infrastructure Consultant

Entry Requirements

Foundation Level / Year 1

A Bahraini or GCC Secondary School (Scientific) Certificate with a minimum of 65% GPA* and 60% in Mathematics and 60% in English language or equivalent. Candidates with a lower GPA may also be admitted, subject to a satisfactory interview by the College.

IELTS Test Score of 4.5 or equivalent.

Direct Entry to Level 4 Year 2

Foundation Year Completion Certificate, or equivalent international qualifications which may typically include:

Advanced Level (A-Level) – BCC or equivalent in UCAS points including Mathematics and preferably a Science in either Chemistry or Physics

International Baccalaureate- IB 29 points

CBSE minimum of 65% with 70% in English

IELTS Test Score of 6.0 or equivalent.

Study Plan

Year	Semester 1	Module Codes	Credit Hours	Semester 2	Module Codes	Credit Hours	Level	
1	Engineering Science 1	ASU_S_ES1	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Engineering Science 2	ASU_S_ES2	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	S	Core
	Intermediate English	ASU_S_IEN	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Advanced English	ASU_S_AEN	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	S	Core
	Mathematics 1	ASU_S_MA1	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Mathematics 2	ASU_S_MA2	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	S	Core
	Principles of Engineering	ASU_S_POE	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Constructing the Built Environment	ASU_S_CBE	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	S	Core
	Laboratory and Workshop Skills	ASU_S_LWS	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Study Skills and Professional Practice	ASU_S_SSP	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	S	Core
				Computer Programming for Engineering	ASU_S_CPE	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	S	Core
Summer	Human Rights				ASU_S_HUR	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	S	Core
	Bahrain Civilisation and History				ASU_S_BCH	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	S	HEC req.
	Arabic Language				ASU_S_ALA	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	S	HEC req.
	Arabic Language for Non-Arabic Speakers				ASU_S_ALN			
Total			50			90		140
2	Engineering Practice and Design 1	ASU_4_EP1	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Engineering Practice and Design 2	ASU_4_EP2	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	4	Core
	Engineering Mathematics 1	ASU_4_EM1	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Engineering Mathematics 2	ASU_4_EM2	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	4	Core
	Principles of Engineering Science 1	ASU_4_PE1	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Principles of Engineering Science 2	ASU_4_PE2	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	4	Core
	Surveying and Structures 1	ASU_4_SS1	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Surveying and Structures 2	ASU_4_SS2	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	4	Core
	Civil Engineering Drawing and Surveying	ASU_4_CDS	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Engineering Ethics	ASU_4_EET	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	4	Core
	Structural Design	ASU_4_SDG	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Soil Mechanics	ASU_4_SME	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	4	Core
Total			60			60		120
3	Advanced Engineering Mathematics	ASU_5_AEM	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Infrastructure and Highway Engineering	ASU_5_IHE	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	5	Core
	Design and Construction 1	ASU_5_DC1	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Civil Engineering and Construction Field Studies	ASU_5_CCF	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	5	Core
	Hydraulics	ASU_5_HYD	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Design and Construction 2	ASU_5_DC2	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	5	Core
	Structural Mechanics	ASU_5_STM	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Advanced Structural Analysis and Design	ASU_5_ASD	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	5	Core
	Environmental Engineering	ASU_5_EEG	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Theory of Structures	ASU_5_THS	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	5	Core
	Engineering Management and Economics	ASU_5_EME	3 hrs. (10 CAT)					
Summer	Internship				ASU_5_ITS	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	5	Core
Total			60			60		120
4	Structural Design and Analysis 1	ASU_6_SA1	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Current Topics in Civil and Construction Engineering	ASU_6_CTC	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	6	Core
	Civil Engineering Materials	ASU_6_CEM	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Geotechnical Engineering	ASU_6_GTE	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	6	Core
	Foundations	ASU_6_FDS	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Structural Design and Analysis 2	ASU_6_SA2	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	6	Core
	Engineering System Design	ASU_6_ESD	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Construction Management	ASU_6_CMG	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	6	Core
	Engineering Research Methods	ASU_6_ERM	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Project	ASU_6_PRJ	6 hrs. (20 CAT)	6	Core
	Innovation, Enterprise and Management	ASU_6_IEM	3 hrs. (10 CAT)					
Total			60			60		120
Total 150 credit hours including HEC requirements								

Mathematics 1 (ASU_S_MA1)

The module is designed to provide students with the mathematical knowledge and skills to support the study of engineering and the requirement for entry into the BEng programmes at ASU. Therefore, it is a preparatory or foundation module building on the knowledge obtained at school.

Intermediate English (ASU_S_IEN)

A 10 CAT module which runs for one semester of 15 weeks for three hours per week. It is the first credit English module that ASU undergraduate students are required to take. The module provides intensive practice in upper-intermediate reading, oral presentations, writing, and note-taking. Academic and study skills are embedded in the module. The module develops students' English language and analytical skills to pursue a more advanced ASU academic English module and cope with the literacy demands of specialised modules taught in English.

Principles of Engineering (ASU_S_POE)

This module develops the students' understanding of essential scientific principles for the study of engineering to the degree level. It is designed to be accessible to students with a wide range of prior science specialisations. The module comprises two blocks of study. These blocks are common to all engineering disciplines and introduce the principles of measurement systems and units, thermal physics, mechanical and electrical principles and engineering materials and their properties.

Study Skills and Professional Practice (ASU_S_SSP)

This module provides an introduction to both study and professional skills and practice. The module introduces study skills considering both individual and team-working skills; it covers exam preparation, revision and question answering techniques. It introduces students to their own Personal Development Planning processes.

It also enables students to develop and use appropriate safe working practices as expected in an engineering and industrial environment.

Engineering Science 1 (ASU_S_ES1)

This module covers scientific principles of physics and chemistry at a level between secondary school level and Advanced Level. It serves as a preparatory module for students intending to undertake engineering undergraduate degree programmes at the University and introduces students to a range of skills required for studying engineering.

Laboratory and Workshop Skills (ASU_S_LWS)

This module is a mixture of workshop exercises and practical experiments and projects. Students work in small groups of 2–5 people, depending on the task. The module also provides students with an introduction to design skills and basic engineering drawing.

Engineering Science 2 (ASU_S_ES2)

This module aims to extend engineering students' science knowledge in preparation for continuing their respective engineering degrees. It covers general applied physical principles, including dynamics, statics, fluids, heat and energy.

Computer Programming for Engineering (ASU_S_CPE)

This module introduces students to concepts of programming. This includes conditional, iterations and block structure. Structured programming and data types will also be introduced and illustrated on typical and simple engineering problems.

Mathematics 2 (ASU_S_MA2)

The module is designed to provide students with the mathematical knowledge and skills necessary for transition to Level 4 study of engineering subjects. Students will attend lectures and tutorials where mathematical exercises are undertaken. Where possible, the statistical content will introduce the use of statistical packages and the presentation of real-life data sets. All students will keep a logbook of the problems tackled.

Besides the 36 contact hours, students are encouraged to spend some time on their own to practise the mathematical concepts they learn during the lectures and solve extra problems.

Constructing the Built Environment (ASU_S_CBE)

This module introduces students to design principles and processes specific to constructing the built environment. It will explore traditional and modern construction methods, and students will understand how new methods and materials can sustain the built environment.

Advanced English (ASU_S_AEN)

A 10 CAT module which runs for one semester of 15 weeks for three hours per week. It is the second credit English module that ASU undergraduate students are required to take. The module provides intensive practice in advanced level reading, oral presentations, writing, and listening. Academic and study skills are embedded in the module. This module aims to enhance students' English and analytical skills as a prerequisite for academic and professional success.

Human Rights (ASU_S_HUR)

This module deals with the basic principles of human rights in terms of the definition of human rights and its scope and source, focusing on the provisions of the international law of human rights, which include the following international documents:

a. Charter of the United Nations
b. The Universal Declaration of Human Rights
c. The International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights
d. The International Covenant on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights
e. Convention against Torture and Cruel, Inhumane Punishments.
f. Protection Mechanisms and Constitutional Organisation of Public Rights and
g. Freedom in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Bahrain Civilisation and History (ASU_S_BCH)

The aim of the module is to highlight the role of the Kingdom of Bahrain in its local, regional and international levels through various historical eras, beginning with the Old Ages through the Islamic era to the modern era. The module demonstrates the Arab and Islamic identity of the Kingdom of Bahrain and the vital role they play politically and culturally.

Arabic Language (ASU_S_ALA)

The module runs for one semester of 7 weeks (Summer Semester). The module provides intensive practice in reading, oral presentations, writing, and note-taking.

Arabic Language for Non-Arabic Speakers (ASU_S_ALN)

The module runs for one semester of 7 weeks (Summer Semester). This Arabic module is required to be taken by non-Arabic speaking students in ASU undergraduate Engineering programmes. The module provides intensive practice for beginners in reading, oral presentations, writing, and note-taking.

Engineering Practice and Design 1 (ASU_4_EP1)

This module provides an introduction to engineering practice and design. Design activities, sustainable design principles, and transferable skills will be considered.

Structural Design (ASU_4_SDG)

Introduction to stress and deformation of basic structural materials subjected to axial, torsional, bending, and pressure loads. Plane stress, plane strain, and stress-strain laws. Applications of stress and deformation analysis to members subjected to centric, torsional, flexural, and combined loading. Introduction to theories of failure.

Engineering Mathematics 1 (ASU_4_EM1)

This module consolidates the mathematical skills that underpin the BEng Engineering Degrees.

Principles of Engineering Science 1 (ASU_4_PE1)

This module develops the students' understanding of essential scientific principles for the study of engineering to the degree level. It is designed to be accessible to students with a wide range of prior science specialisations.

This module develops the students' understanding of methods for quantifying the forces between bodies. Forces that are responsible for maintaining equilibrium. This module is common to all engineering disciplines and introduces the principles of measurement systems, force and moment vector and traditional analysis, and forces in equilibrium.

Surveying and Structures 1 (ASU_4_SS1)

This module introduces students to principles of surveying and setting out, including distance and angular measurements, levelling, volume and curve calculation, dimensional control and positioning. Students will use various surveying instruments, including tapes, levels, and Theodolite/Total Stations. Students are also introduced to modern advances in surveying technology, such as GPS and lasers and their uses in civil engineering and construction. Knowledge is acquired through computational exercises and the completion of practical survey work.

Civil Engineering Drawing and Surveying (ASU_4_CDS)

Civil Engineering Drawing – rationale, documentation, standards, use of CAD or BIM software to produce structural engineering drawings in concrete and steel. Interpret civil engineering drawings for structures, roads and drainage. Civil Engineering Survey – theory and practice in the use of surveying instruments as applied to civil engineering and construction projects. Calculations and survey techniques.

Engineering Practice and Design 2 (ASU_4_EP2)

The module covers practical work, project management, health and safety and risk management, and transferable skills.

Engineering Mathematics 2 (ASU_4_EM2)

This module consolidates the mathematical skills that underpin the BEng Engineering Degrees.

Principles of Engineering Science 2 (ASU_4_PE2)

This module develops the students' understanding of essential scientific principles for the study of engineering to the degree level. It is designed to be accessible to students with a wide range of prior science specialisations. The module comprises two blocks of study. These blocks are common to all engineering disciplines and introduce mechanical and electrical principles and engineering materials and their properties.

Surveying and Structures 2 (ASU_4_SS2)

This module develops students' practice with structural engineering, provides an introduction to structural concepts, and provides an overview of specific techniques for analysing determinate structures, trusses, beams, and frames.

Engineering Ethics (ASU_4_EET)

This module introduces the theory and the practice of engineering ethics using a multi-disciplinary and cross-cultural approach. The theory includes ethics and the philosophy of engineering. Historical cases that were taken primarily from the scholarly literature on engineering ethics and hypothetical cases were examined and critically evaluated by students linking to the codes of engineering ethics set by different professional bodies. Students will compare these cases and recommend action.

Soil Mechanics (ASU_4_SME)

This module introduces a number of simple models which were used to describe soil and its mechanical behaviour. Standard laboratory tests were carried out, and soil properties were derived from the results.

Advanced Engineering Mathematics (ASU_5_AEM)

This module covers advanced undergraduate engineering mathematics.

Design and Construction 1 (ASU_5_DC1)

This module offers the knowledge and skills of masonry and reinforced masonry structure design to Eurocodes, analysis of structural form and the ability to design in both qualitative and quantitative directions.

Hydraulics (ASU_5_HYD)

This module develops the fundamental principles of Fluid Mechanics and applies them to practical applications of analysis and design. Students will develop a greater understanding of the flow of ideal and real fluids and will apply these principles to the analysis and design of pipes and open channels. Students will perform simple laboratory tests and prepare a formal report.

Structural Mechanics (ASU_5_STM)

This module introduces Building Information Modelling (BIM) and explains how BIM has changed the construction industry worldwide. Case studies of projects where BIM improved sustainability and reduced cost were studied. Students model typical multi-storey framed steel and concrete buildings in Autodesk Revit and apply appropriate variable actions on the floors. They transfer the building model to the Autodesk Robot Structural Analysis programme and analyse design beams and columns. They compare computer results to hand calculations results, obtained using load take-down methods and design formulae.

Environmental Engineering (ASU_5_EEG)

This module takes the principles of environmental engineering and applies them to practical applications of analysis and design. Students will be introduced to the principles of water, water quality, and wastewater treatment processes and to consider sustainability issues. Students will develop an understanding of the hydrological cycle and surface hydrology, and apply these principles to the calculation of precipitation and unit hydrograph. Students will also learn the basics of groundwater flow and the problem of contamination in groundwater. The unit also introduces air pollution and noise pollution.

Infrastructure and Highway Engineering (ASU_5_IHE)

This is substantially a theory and project-based module. It brings together construction, design, contractual, planning, management and safety processes. It emphasises the link between materials and site geological properties and their relationship with design and execution. Highway engineering will occupy half the contact time, and this will include geometric and structural design aspects, which will integrate some geology, earthwork and drainage. The module will also include site visits. Standard laboratory tests were carried out, and bitumen properties were derived from the results. Problems to be solved include geometric design, traffic volume, channelisation, and hydrology. Lab projects involve roadway designing.

Engineering Management and Economics (ASU_5_EME)

This module helps to prepare students for their future roles as professional engineers in a number of ways. It includes:

- detailed study of project planning techniques, including network techniques, with preparation for the student's individual projects
- an overview of the business functions which interact with engineering
- an introduction to Systems Thinking. A formal method for studying systems will be introduced.
- An introduction to recruitment, retention and equal opportunities in employment
- the use of published Standards in engineering
- use of the BSI website to access national and international standards
- an introduction to statistics and their use in managing engineering processes

• an introduction to Quality Management, with particular reference to the ISO 9000 series
• An introduction to European Directives and harmonised standards
• Writing technical business reports, including the importance of acknowledging published sources and the use of formal methods for doing so

Internship (ASU_5_ITS)

This module provides the students with an opportunity to experience the industrial world and be part of a team working on real-world projects. The University assists each student in finding the most suitable industry.

Design and Construction 2 (ASU_5_DC2)

This module offers the knowledge and skills of marine structures, analysis and design of Eurocodes, analysis of structural form and the ability to design in both qualitative and quantitative directions - including ports and offshore structures and dams.

Advanced Structural Analysis and Design (ASU_5_ASD)

This module develops students' practice with structural engineering, introduces structural concepts, and provides an overview of specific techniques for analysing indeterminate structures beams, and frame structures.

Theory of Structures (ASU_5_THS)

This module mainly deals with the matrix-stiffness analysis of structures. It begins with a review of the basic concepts of structural analysis and matrix algebra and shows how the latter provides a mathematical framework for the former.
This is followed by detailed descriptions and demonstrations through many examples of how matrix methods can be applied to linear static analysis of skeletal structures (plane and space trusses; beams and grids; plane and space frames) by the stiffness method.
Also, it is shown how simple structures can be conveniently solved using a reduced stiffness formulation, involving far less computational effort. Finally, the Finite Element Analysis is discussed.

Civil Engineering and Construction Field Study (ASU_5_CCF)

The module introduces students to the practical side of the civil and construction engineering industry. It gives them the opportunity to visit sites. It ensures that students are aware of real-life situations in projects. Students will be able to critically appraise and evaluate construction management situations and report on them.

Structural Design and Analysis 1 (ASU_6_SA1)

This module offers the knowledge and skills of reinforced concrete design to Eurocodes, analysis of structural form and the ability to design in both qualitative and quantitative directions.

Civil Engineering Materials (ASU_6_CEM)

The module provides an overview of general civil engineering material performance requirements and properties: strength, stiffness, durability, and appearance. This will include concrete, steel, and timber. The module will provide an overview of available materials, geotextile functions and mechanisms, designing with geotextiles, stresses in materials and biaxial stress systems.

Foundations (ASU_6_FDS)

Shallow foundations design. Bearing capacities of soils, safe, net and ultimate; factor of safety; mass concrete footings; footing resisting lift; column type footings. Two-way footing concentrically or eccentrically loaded; AS 3600 code requirements; design loads; critical section for shear; punching shear and bending shear, anchor bolts. Combined footings; design of strap or cantilever footings. Design of mat foundations. Design of retaining walls. Design of reinforced retaining walls. Sheet pile walls design. Residential footings design.

Innovation, Enterprise and Management (ASU_6_IEM)

The module is intended to be practical, with students developing some appropriate ideas of their own in such a way that they become practical, profitable propositions. Students will practice ways of finding ideas, testing those ideas and developing them, and will write their own business strategies, risk assessments and scenario testing so that they demonstrate the commercial viability of their ideas.
One of the assignments will require students to work in groups, typically to adopt a concept and develop it such that it could be commercially viable and sustainable. This might be a product or a service (such as consultancy or contract management).
Students will experience topics addressing intellectual property, market research, market placement, advertising and finance. They will be expected to reflect on what they can contribute to a group.

Engineering System Design (ASU_6_ESD)

To involve the student in the process of engineering project development from planning to detailed design and working with a project team.

Engineering Research Methods (ASU_6_ERM)

The module studies the scope and significance of engineering research. It introduces students to the various aspects of engineering research; its types, tools and methods and students will learn how to apply research techniques to real-world situations. The module covers topics such as the identification

of a topic by the student, proposition of hypothesis, formulation of research inquiries, development of literature review, and select research design and methodologies. Additionally, students will learn data collection techniques; primary and secondary data with application to specific problems, scaling and research instrument design and sampling design.

Current Topics in Civil and Construction Engineering (ASU_6_CTC)

The module introduces students to new issues, ideas and trends in the civil and construction engineering industry. It ensures that students are kept up-to-date with developments. Students will experience topics addressing Building Information Modelling, 3D Printing, Smart analyses of Buildings and Smart Cities, Modular Construction, Plastic Roads, Sustainability issues, and other related matters.

Geotechnical Engineering (ASU_6_GTE)

This module shows how the soil mechanics theories introduced in Soil Mechanics are applied to the solution of a number of geotechnical analyses and design problems.

Structural Design and Analysis 2 (ASU_6_SA2)

This module offers the knowledge and skills of steel design to Eurocodes, analysis of structural form and the ability to design in both qualitative and quantitative directions.

Construction Management (ASU_6_CMG)

This module prepares students with the ability to critically appraise and evaluate the performance of the construction industry and shed light on the role of construction management.

Project (ASU_6_PRJ)

To plan, execute, review and report upon a piece of project work related to the BEng programme being followed by the student. A Module Guide for the project is augmented by eight lectures.

BEng (Hons) Electrical and Electronic Engineering

LSBU London South Bank University

ASU جامعة العلوم التطبيقية APPLIED SCIENCE UNIVERSITY

Head of Department:
Dr. Malak Naji

Office Number:
+973 16036223

Email:
malak.naji@asu.edu.bh

Dean of the College:
Dr. Mohamed Salama

Office Number:
+973 16036273

Email:
mohamed.salama@asu.edu.bh

Apply Now

Enquiry

Programme Details

Final Qualification	Language of Study	Mode of Study
BEng (Hons)	English	Full Time

Programme Structure

Study Period	Total Credit Hours	Number of Courses
4 Years	150 Credit Hours	32 Courses

Brief about the Programme

This programme is intended for undergraduate students who wish to study the discipline of Electrical and Electronic Engineering to Honours degree level and who may wish to achieve professional status later. This programme is designed to embrace developments in the industry, in particular the Engineering Council UK (ECUK) Standard for Professional Engineering Competence (UK-SPEC). The curriculum emphasises the development of traditional engineering numerical strengths coupled with an enquiring creative approach as required by employers.

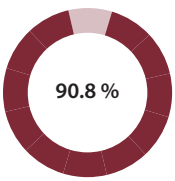
The programme leads to a dual award from Applied Science University (ASU Bahrain) and London South Bank University (LSBU-UK).

Aims of the Programme

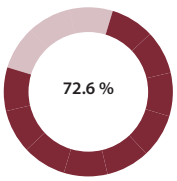
1. Equip graduates with a deep understanding of electrical and electronic engineering.
2. Develop graduate expertise in mathematics, circuit theory, digital and analogue systems, hybrid electronic systems, computer hardware and software, as well as the theory and applications of control systems.
3. Equip graduates with the ability to analyse electrical and electronic engineering components and systems using advanced simulation techniques, understand the advantages and disadvantages of different analytical approaches, and select the most appropriate solution.
4. Enhance practical design, testing, measurement skills, and proficiency with advanced software and hardware tools.
5. Graduates will acquire the ability to critically evaluate arguments, assumptions, abstract concepts, and data (even when incomplete), make judgements, and identify a range of effective solutions.

General Statistics

Advisory Board Satisfaction Rate:



Student Satisfaction Rate:



The first university in the Kingdom of Bahrain to achieve global accreditation from the British Quality Assurance Agency for Higher Education (QAA)

Rated 5 Stars in the QS Rating System

Ranked 30th in the QS Arab Region University Rankings 2026

Ranked 613 in the QS World University Rankings 2026

Ranked 301+ Worldwide in the Times Higher Education University Impact Rankings

Career Paths

1. Electrical Engineer
2. Electronics Engineer
3. Power Systems Engineer
4. Telecommunications Engineer
5. Control Systems Engineer
6. Instrumentation Engineer
7. Renewable Energy Engineer
8. Embedded Systems Developer
9. Automation Engineer
10. Network Engineer

Entry Requirements

Foundation Level / Year 1

A Bahraini or GCC Secondary School (Scientific) Certificate with a minimum of 65% GPA* and 60% in Mathematics and 60% in English language or equivalent. Candidates from the industrial track can also be admitted to BEng (Hons) Electrical and Electronic Engineering. Candidates with a lower GPA may also be admitted, subject to a satisfactory interview by the College.

IELTS Test Score of 4.5 or equivalent.

Direct Entry to Level 4 Year 2

Foundation Year Completion Certificate, or equivalent international qualifications which may typically include:

Advanced Level (A-Level) – BBC or equivalent in UCAS points including Maths or Physical Science

International Baccalaureate- IB 30 points

CBSE minimum of 65% with 70% in English

IELTS Test Score of 6.0 or equivalent.

Study Plan

Year	Semester 1	Module Codes	Credit Hours	Semester 2	Module Codes	Credit Hours	Level	
1	Engineering Science 1	ASU_S_ES1	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Engineering Science 2	ASU_S_ES2	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	S	Core
	Intermediate English	ASU_S_IEN	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Advanced English	ASU_S_AEN	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	S	Core
	Mathematics 1	ASU_S_MA1	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Mathematics 2	ASU_S_MA2	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	S	Core
	Scientific Principles of Engineering	ASU_S_SPE	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Practical Electronics	ASU_S_PRE	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	S	Core
	Laboratory and Workshop Skills	ASU_S_LWS	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Study Skills and Professional Practice	ASU_S_SSP	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	S	Core
				Computer Programming for Engineering	ASU_S_CPE	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	S	Core
Summer	Human Rights				ASU_S_HUR	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	S	Core
	Bahrain Civilisation and History				ASU_S_BCH	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	S	HEC req.
	Arabic Language				ASU_S_ALA	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	S	HEC req.
	Arabic Language for Non-Arabic Speakers				ASU_S_ALN			
Total			50			90		140
2	Design and Practice	ASU_4_DAP	6 hrs. (20 CAT)	Engineering Computing	ASU_4_ENC	6 hrs. (20 CAT)	4	Core
	Engineering Principles	ASU_4_EPR	6 hrs. (20 CAT)	Introduction to Electrical and Electronic Engineering	ASU_4_IEE	6 hrs. (20 CAT)	4	Core
	Engineering Mathematics and Modelling	ASU_4_EMM	6 hrs. (20 CAT)	Introduction to Digital Electronics	ASU_4_IDE	6 hrs. (20 CAT)	4	Core
Total			60			60		120
3	Advanced Engineering Mathematics and Modelling	ASU_5_AMM	6 hrs. (20 CAT)	Team Design Project	ASU_5_TDP	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	5	Core
	Circuits, Signals and Systems	ASU_5_CSS	6 hrs. (20 CAT)	Electrical Machines and Power Electronics	ASU_5_EPE	6 hrs. (20 CAT)	5	Core
	Principles of Control	ASU_5_POC	6 hrs. (20 CAT)	Analogue and Digital Circuit Design	ASU_5_ADC	6 hrs. (20 CAT)	5	Core
Summer	Internship				ASU_5_INT	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	5	Core
Total			60			60		120
4	Digital Systems Design	ASU_6_DSD	6 hrs. (20 CAT)	Advanced Analogue and RF Electronics	ASU_6_AAE	6 hrs. (20 CAT)	6	Core
	Project	ASU_6_PRE	12 hrs. (40 CAT)	Innovation and Enterprise	ASU_6_IAE	6 hrs. (20 CAT)	6	Core
				Control Engineering	ASU_6_CEN	6 hrs. (20 CAT)	6	Core
Total			60			60		120
Total 150 credit hours including HEC requirements								

Mathematics 1 ASU_S_MA1

The module is designed to provide students with the mathematical knowledge and skills to support the study of engineering and to provide the requirement for entry into the BEng programmes at ASU. Therefore, it is a preparatory or foundation module building on the knowledge obtained at school.

Mathematics 2 ASU_S_MA2

The module is designed to provide students with the mathematical knowledge and skills necessary for transition to Level 4 study of engineering subjects. Students will attend lectures and tutorials where mathematical exercises are undertaken. Where possible, the statistical content will introduce the use of statistical packages and the presentation of real-life data sets. All students will keep a logbook of the problems tackled.
Besides the 36 contact hours, students are encouraged to spend additional time practicing mathematical concepts learned during lectures and solving extra problems.

Engineering Science 1 ASU_S_ES1

This module covers scientific principles of physics and chemistry at a level between secondary school and Advanced Level. It serves as a preparatory module for students intending to undertake engineering undergraduate degree programmes and introduces students to a range of skills required for the study of engineering.

Engineering Science 2 ASU_S_ES2

This module extends the science knowledge of engineering students in preparation for continuing their respective engineering degrees. It covers general applied physical principles, including dynamics, statics, fluids, heat, and energy.

Intermediate English ASU_S_IEN

A 10 CAT module running for one semester of 15 weeks for three hours per week. It is the first credit English module required for ASU undergraduate students. The module provides intensive practice in upper-intermediate reading, oral presentations, writing, and note-taking. Academic and study skills are embedded. It develops students' English language and analytical skills to pursue more advanced academic English modules and cope with literacy demands of specialised modules taught in English.

Advanced English ASU_S_AEN

A 10 CAT module running for one semester of 15 weeks for three hours per week. It is the second credit English module required for ASU undergraduate students. The module provides intensive practice in advanced reading, oral presentations, writing, and listening. Academic and study skills are embedded. It enhances students' English and analytical skills as preparation for academic and professional success.

Practical Electronics ASU_S_PRE

This module discusses electrical measurement equipment and practical circuit design and construction techniques. It combines theory and practical components where students become familiar with the basics of electrical and electronic engineering, particularly safe working practices in electronics.

Scientific Principles of Engineering ASU_S_SPE

This module develops students' understanding of essential physics and chemistry principles for engineering study. It introduces fundamentals of statics, dynamics, and electrical and mechanical properties of materials.

Study Skills and Professional Practice ASU_S_SSP

This module introduces study and professional skills, including individual and team-working skills, exam preparation, revision techniques, and question-answering strategies. It also introduces Personal Development Planning and safe working practices in engineering and industrial environments.

Laboratory and Workshop Skills ASU_S_LWS

This module consists of workshop exercises, practical experiments, and projects. Students work in small groups (2–5 members). It also introduces design skills and basic engineering drawing.

Computer Programming for Engineering ASU_S_CPE

This module introduces programming concepts including conditionals, iterations, block structures, structured programming, and data types. These are illustrated using simple engineering problems.

Human Rights ASU_S_HUR

This module covers basic principles of human rights, definitions, scope, and sources, focusing on international human rights law, including the Charter of the United Nations, the Universal Declaration of Human Rights, the International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights, the International Covenant on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights, and the Convention against Torture and Cruel, Inhumane Punishments. It also addresses protection mechanisms and constitutional organisation of public rights and freedom in the Kingdom of Bahrain.

Bahrain Civilisation and History ASU_S_BCH

This module highlights the role of the Kingdom of Bahrain at local, regional, and international levels through various historical eras, from ancient times through the Islamic era to the modern era. It demonstrates the Arab and Islamic identity of Bahrain and its political and cultural significance.

Arabic Language ASU_S_ALA

A 10 CAT module running for one semester of 7 weeks (Summer Semester). It provides intensive practice in reading, oral presentations, writing, and note-taking.

Arabic Language for Non-Arabic Speakers ASU_S_ALN

This module of 10 CAT's runs for one semester of 7 weeks (Summer Semester). This Arabic module is required to be taken by non-Arabic speaking students in ASU undergraduate Engineering programmes. The module provides intensive practice for beginners in reading, oral presentations, writing, and note-taking.

Design and Practice ASU_4_DAP

This module introduces engineering practice and design, including hand and computer-aided drawing, sustainable design principles, project management, group work, and health and safety. It includes a lab component for practical application.

Engineering Mathematics and Modelling ASU_4_EMM

This module consolidates mathematical skills underpinning BEng degrees, including differentiation, integration, complex numbers, linear algebra, statistics, probability, and probability distributions. It includes practical use of Matlab and Excel.

Engineering Principles ASU_4_EPR

This module develops understanding of scientific principles including measurement systems, thermal physics, mechanical and electrical principles, and engineering materials.

Engineering Computing ASU_4_ENC

An introductory module to Object-Oriented Programming using Python. It develops programming skills for engineering design and simulation.

Introduction to Electrical and Electronic Engineering ASU_4_IEE

This module covers fundamentals of voltage, current, power, energy, Ohm's Law, Kirchhoff's Laws, circuit analysis techniques, DC and AC circuits, and semiconductor basics (diodes, BJTs, op-amps). It includes practical laboratory experiments.

Introduction to Digital Electronics ASU_4_IDE

This module covers Boolean logic circuits, CAD modelling, VHDL, sequential logic circuits, and programmable logic devices. A practical component allows students to apply theoretical concepts.

Advanced Engineering Mathematics and Modelling ASU_5_AMM

This module covers advanced techniques including vectors, differential equations, numerical methods, matrix computation, computational optimisation, and advanced statistical techniques.

Circuits, Signals and Systems ASU_5_CSS

This module introduces analysis of linear time-invariant systems, frequency content of signals, system dynamics, communication theory, signal processing, and control theory. It includes Matlab/Simulink practical work.

Principles of Control ASU_5_POC

An introduction to continuous-time feedback control systems, modelling of dynamical systems, and practical control applications including robotics and industrial systems.

Team Design Project ASU_5_TDP

Develops engineering design skills including requirements identification, standards compliance, teamwork, project management, and professional reporting.

Electrical Machines and Power Electronics ASU_5_EPE

This module covers electrical drives, machine design, power electronics, vector control of AC machines, and machine analysis using software. Includes laboratory experiments.

Analogue and Digital Circuit Design ASU_5_ADC

Provides knowledge of analogue, mixed-signal, and digital circuits, with practical experience in device-level and system-level design.

Internship ASU_5_INT

Provides industrial experience through real-world projects. The University assists students in securing suitable placements.

Digital Systems Design ASU_6_DSD

Covers modern digital system design using finite state machines, CPLDs, microcontrollers, synchronous/asynchronous systems, design for testability, and CAD tools. Includes practical labs.

Project ASU_6_PRO

An individual research project spanning two semesters. It develops planning, engineering competence, critical judgment, and communication skills.

Innovation and Enterprise ASU_6_IAE

This module develops entrepreneurial skills including idea generation, market research, intellectual property, financial planning, and business strategy development.

Control Engineering ASU_6_CEN

Builds on Principles of Control, introducing analogue and digital control methods to improve system stability and performance. Includes laboratory implementation.

Advanced Analogue and RF Electronics ASU_6_AAE

Covers RF system design, noise measurement, EMC, wave propagation, modulation techniques, and related circuits. Includes practical laboratory experiments.

BEng (Hons) Mechanical Engineering

LSBU London South Bank University

ASU جامعة العلوم التطبيقية APPLIED SCIENCE UNIVERSITY

Head of Department:
Dr. Malak Naji

Office Number:
+973 16036223

Email:
malak.naji@asu.edu.bh

Dean of the College:
Mohamed Salama

Office Number:
+973 16036273

Email:
mohamed.salama@asu.edu.bh

Apply Now

Enquiry

Programme Details

Final Qualification	Language of Study	Mode of Study
BEng (Hons)	English	Full Time

Programme Structure

Study Period	Total Credit Hours	Number of Courses
4 Years	150 Credit Hours	32 Courses

Brief about the Programme

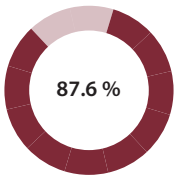
This programme is for students who wish to study Mechanical Engineering to Honours degree level and who wish to achieve professional status later. It is designed to embrace developments in the industry, in particular the Engineering Council UK (ECUK) Standard for Professional Engineering Competence (UK-SPEC). The curriculum emphasises the development of traditional engineering numerical strengths coupled with an enquiring creative approach as required by employers. Mechanical engineering is a broad discipline offering many specialisms, and this degree provides a solid foundation for all of them. The programme leads to a dual award from Applied Science University (ASU Bahrain) and London South Bank University (LSBU-UK).

Aims of the Programme

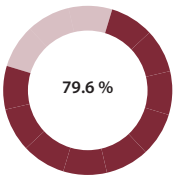
1. Graduates will have a systematic understanding of key topics such as Dynamics, Thermofluids, Solid Mechanics, and Manufacturing, supported by Mathematics, Electrical Engineering, and Computing.
2. Graduates will acquire analytical abilities and Competence in analysing components and systems.
3. Graduates will enhance their practical skills and proficiency in manufacturing, measurement, and instrumentation techniques.
4. Graduates will develop skills in self-awareness, reflection, independent judgment, and lifelong learning.
5. Graduates will master project management and demonstrate creativity in problem-solving, project execution, and innovation-driven design.

General Statistics

Advisory Board Satisfaction Rate:



Student Satisfaction Rate:



The first university in the Kingdom of Bahrain to achieve global accreditation from the British Quality Assurance Agency for Higher Education (QAA)

Rated 5 Stars in the QS Rating System

Ranked 30th in the QS Arab Region University Rankings 2026

Ranked 613 in the QS World University Rankings 2026

Ranked 301+ Worldwide in the Times Higher Education University Impact Rankings

Career Paths

1. Mechanical Engineer
2. Manufacturing Engineer
3. Automotive Engineer
4. Maintenance Engineer
5. HVAC Engineer
6. Robotics Engineer
7. Energy Systems Engineer
8. Quality Assurance Engineer
9. Industrial Engineer
10. Product Design Engineer

Entry Requirements

Foundation Level / Year 1

A Bahraini or GCC Secondary School (Scientific) Certificate with a minimum of 65% GPA* and 60% in Mathematics and 60% in English language or equivalent. Candidates from the industrial track can also be admitted to BEng (Hons) Mechanical Engineering. Candidates with a lower GPA may also be admitted, subject to a satisfactory interview by the College.

IELTS Test Score of 4.5 or equivalent.

Direct Entry to Level 4 Year 2

Foundation Year Completion Certificate, or equivalent international qualifications which may typically include:

Advanced Level (A-Level) – BBC or equivalent in UCAS points including Maths or Physical Science

International Baccalaureate- IB 30 points

CBSE minimum of 65% with 70% in English

IELTS Test Score of 6.0 or equivalent.

Study Plan

Year	Semester 1	Module Codes	Credit Hours	Semester 2	Module Codes	Credit Hours	Level	
1	Engineering Science 1	ASU_S_ES1	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Engineering Science 2	ASU_S_ES2	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	S	Core
	Intermediate English	ASU_S_IEN	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Advanced English	ASU_S_AEN	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	S	Core
	Mathematics 1	ASU_S_MA1	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Mathematics 2	ASU_S_MA2	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	S	Core
	Scientific Principles of Engineering	ASU_S_SPE	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Engineering Design and Modelling	ASU_S_EDM	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	S	Core
	Laboratory and Workshop Skills	ASU_S_LWS	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	Study Skills and Professional Practice	ASU_S_SSP	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	S	Core
				Computer Programming for Engineering	ASU_S_CPE	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	S	Core
Summer	**Human Rights**				**ASU_S_HUR**	**3 hrs. (10 CAT)**	**S**	**Core**
	Bahrain Civilisation and History				**ASU_S_BCH**	**3 hrs. (10 CAT)**	**S**	**HEC req.**
	Arabic Language				**ASU_S_ALA**	**3 hrs. (10 CAT)**	**S**	**HEC req.**
	Arabic Language for Non-Arabic Speakers				**ASU_S_ALN**			
Total			**50**			**90**		**140**
2	Design and Practice	ASU_4_DAP	6 hrs. (20 CAT)	Engineering Computing	ASU_4_ENC	6 hrs. (20 CAT)	4	Core
	Engineering Mathematics and Modelling	ASU_4_EMM	6 hrs. (20 CAT)	Thermofluids and Dynamics	ASU_4_TAD	6 hrs. (20 CAT)	4	Core
	Introduction to Mechanical Engineering	ASU_4_IME	6 hrs. (20 CAT)	Introduction to Electrical and Electronic Engineering	ASU_4_IEE	6 hrs. (20 CAT)	4	Core
Total			60			60		120
3	Advanced Engineering Mathematics and Modelling	ASU_5_AMM	6 hrs. (20 CAT)	Dynamics and Control	ASU_5_DAC	6 hrs. (20 CAT)	5	Core
	Solid Mechanics and Finite Element Analysis	ASU_5_FEA	6 hrs. (20 CAT)	Thermofluids and Sustainable Energy	ASU_5_TSE	6 hrs. (20 CAT)	5	Core
	Machine Drives and Mechatronics	ASU_5_MDM	6 hrs. (20 CAT)	Engineering Design	ASU_5_END	3 hrs. (10 CAT)	5	Core
Summer	**Internship**				**ASU_5_INT**	**3 hrs. (10 CAT)**	**5**	**Core**
Total			**60**			**60**		**120**
4	Dynamics and System Modelling	ASU_6_DSM	6 hrs. (20 CAT)	Innovation and Enterprise	ASU_6_IAE	6 hrs. (20 CAT)	6	Core
	Project	ASU_6_PRM	12 hrs. (40 CAT)	Thermofluids and Turbo machinery	ASU_6_TTM	6 hrs. (20 CAT)	6	Core
				Manufacturing Systems and Materials Technologies	ASU_6_MMT	6 hrs. (20 CAT)	6	Core
Total			**60**			**60**		**120**
Total 150 credit hours including HEC requirements								

Mathematics 1 (ASU_S_MA1)

The module is designed to provide students with the mathematical knowledge and skills to support the study of engineering and to meet the requirements for entry into the BEng programmes at ASU. Therefore, it is a preparatory or foundation module building on knowledge obtained at school.

Mathematics 2 (ASU_S_MA2)

The module is designed to provide students with the mathematical knowledge and skills necessary for transition to Level 4 study of engineering subjects. Students will attend lectures and tutorials where mathematical exercises are undertaken. Where possible, the statistical content will introduce the use of statistical packages and the presentation of real-life data sets. All students will keep a logbook of the problems tackled.

Besides the 36 contact hours, students are encouraged to spend time independently to practice the mathematical concepts learned during lectures and solve additional problems.

Engineering Science 1 (ASU_S_ES1)

This module covers scientific principles of physics and chemistry at a level between secondary school and Advanced Level. It serves as a preparatory module for students intending to undertake engineering undergraduate degree programmes at the University and introduces students to a range of skills required for the study of engineering.

Engineering Science 2 (ASU_S_ES2)

This module extends engineering students' scientific knowledge in preparation for continuing their respective engineering degrees. It covers general applied physical principles, including dynamics, statics, fluids, heat, and energy.

Intermediate English (ASU_S_IEN)

A 10 CAT module running for one semester (15 weeks) at three hours per week. It is the first credit English module required for ASU undergraduate students. The module provides intensive practice in upper-intermediate reading, oral presentations, writing, and note-taking. Academic and study skills are embedded throughout. It develops students' English language and analytical skills to pursue more advanced academic English modules and cope with the literacy demands of specialised modules taught in English.

Advanced English (ASU_S_AEN)

A 10 CAT module running for one semester (15 weeks) at three hours per week. It is the second credit English module required for ASU undergraduate students. The module provides intensive practice in advanced-level reading, oral presentations, writing, and listening. Academic and study skills are embedded throughout. It aims to enhance students' English and analytical skills as a prerequisite for academic and professional success.

Engineering Design and Modelling (ASU_S_EDM)

This module introduces engineering design, including the basics of the design process, machining and fabrication, and hand and computer-based engineering drawings. It highlights the role of engineering design within the industry and is taught in a mechanical workshop where students use model-making tools.

Scientific Principles of Engineering (ASU_S_SPE)

This module develops students' understanding of essential physics and chemistry principles for engineering study. It is accessible to students from various science backgrounds. The module introduces fundamentals of statics, dynamics, and the electrical and mechanical properties of materials.

Study Skills and Professional Practice (ASU_S_SSP)

This module introduces both study and professional skills and practices. It covers individual and team-working skills, exam preparation, revision techniques, and question-answering strategies. Students are introduced to Personal Development Planning processes and appropriate safe working practices expected in engineering and industrial environments.

Laboratory and Workshop Skills (ASU_S_LWS)

This module combines workshop exercises with practical experiments and projects. Students work in small groups of 2–5 members depending on the task. It also introduces design skills and basic engineering drawing.

Computer Programming for Engineering (ASU_S_CPE)

This module introduces programming concepts including conditionals, iterations, and block structures. Structured programming and data types are illustrated through typical and simple engineering problems.

Human Rights (ASU_S_HUR)

This module covers the basic principles of human rights, including definitions, scope, and sources, focusing on international human rights law. It includes:

a. Charter of the United Nations
b. Universal Declaration of Human Rights
c. International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights
d. International Covenant on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights
e. Convention against Torture and Cruel, Inhuman Punishments
f. Protection mechanisms and constitutional organisation of public rights and freedoms
g. Freedom in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Bahrain Civilisation and History (ASU_S_BCH)

This module highlights the role of the Kingdom of Bahrain locally, regionally, and internationally through various historical eras from ancient times to the modern era. It demonstrates Bahrain's Arab and Islamic identity and its political and cultural significance.

Arabic Language (ASU_S_ALA)

A 10 CAT module running for one semester of 7 weeks (Summer Semester). The module provides intensive practice in reading, oral presentations, writing, and note-taking.

Arabic Language for Non-Arabic Speakers (ASU_S_ALN)

A 10 CAT module running for one semester of 7 weeks (Summer Semester). This module is required for non-Arabic speaking students in ASU undergraduate engineering programmes and provides intensive beginner-level practice in reading, oral presentations, writing, and note-taking.

Design and Practice (ASU_4_DAP)

This module introduces engineering practice and design, including hand and computer-aided drawings, design activities, sustainable design principles, project management, group work, and health and safety issues. The module includes a lab component where students apply theoretical concepts.

Engineering Mathematics and Modelling (ASU_4_EMM)

This module consolidates the mathematical skills underpinning BEng engineering degrees. Content includes differentiation and integration, complex numbers, linear algebra, statistics, elementary probability, and probability distributions with engineering applications. A practical component involves the use of mathematical software packages such as MATLAB and Excel.

Introduction to Mechanical Engineering (ASU_4_IME)

This module introduces core mechanical engineering concepts including engineering materials, statics, strength of materials, dynamics, and material science. A practical laboratory component equips students with relevant professional skills.

Engineering Computing (ASU_4_ENC)

This introductory module covers Object-Oriented Programming (OOP) using Python. It enables students to develop programming skills required for engineering design and simulation.

Thermofluids and Dynamics (ASU_4_TAD)

This module introduces thermofluids, including heat transfer, fluid mechanics, and thermodynamics, enabling students to analyse simple engineering systems. A practical component includes laboratory experiments.

Introduction to Electrical and Electronic Engineering (ASU_4_IEE)

This module covers fundamentals of electrical and electronic engineering, including voltage, current, power, energy, Ohm's Law, Kirchhoff's Laws, node voltage and mesh current methods, DC and AC circuit analysis, and semiconductors (diodes, BJTs, and op-amps). A practical laboratory component reinforces theoretical concepts.

Advanced Engineering Mathematics and Modelling (ASU_5_AMM)

This module covers advanced mathematical techniques for engineering problem-solving, including computational techniques, vectors, differential equations, numerical methods, matrix computation, optimisation, and advanced statistical methods.

Solid Mechanics and Finite Element Analysis (ASU_5_FEA)

This module builds on earlier solid mechanics knowledge and introduces finite element analysis (FEA) techniques for structural and stress analysis. A practical component involves the use of FEA software.

Machine Drives and Mechatronics (ASU_5_MDM)

This module covers mechanical drives, power transmission systems, microcontrollers, and electrical actuation systems. A laboratory component supports practical application.

Dynamics and Control (ASU_5_DAC)

This module extends dynamics from point masses to rigid bodies and introduces classical control methods including Bode, Nyquist, and Root Locus techniques. A practical component includes experimental work and technical reporting.

Thermofluids and Sustainable Energy (ASU_5_TSE)

This module advances knowledge in thermodynamics, heat transfer, and fluid mechanics. Topics include steam cycles, air-standard cycles, refrigeration cycles, turbulence, combustion, and heat transfer applications.

Engineering Design (ASU_5_END)

This module develops students' ability to apply structured design methodologies and computer-aided design tools. It emphasises problem-solving, 2D and 3D parametric modelling, and industry-relevant software.

Internship (ASU_5_INT)

This module provides students with industrial experience through participation in real-world projects. The University assists students in securing suitable placements.

Dynamics and System Modelling (ASU_6_DSM)

This module introduces system dynamics modelling for analysing complex, time-dependent systems. Topics include modelling processes, feedback structures, system mapping tools, and applications in energy, water, and aquaculture sectors.

Project (ASU_6_PRO)

This module enables students to undertake independent research, integrating knowledge and skills acquired throughout their studies. It develops planning, critical thinking, engineering competence, and communication skills across two semesters.

Innovation and Enterprise (ASU_6_IAE)

This practical module guides students in developing commercially viable ideas. Topics include project management, intellectual property, market research, risk assessment, finance, and business strategy development.

Thermofluids and Turbo Machinery (ASU_6_TTM)

This module provides advanced study in thermodynamics, fluid mechanics, and heat transfer, including internal combustion engines, pumps, turbines, and heat exchangers. Laboratory experiments support theoretical learning.

Manufacturing Systems and Materials Technologies (ASU_6_MMT)

This module covers advanced stress analysis, material behaviour, manufacturing systems, automation, process planning, robotics, and operations management principles.

LSBU London South Bank University
EST 1892

ASU جامعة العلوم التطبيقية APPLIED SCIENCE UNIVERSITY

ENGINEERING PROGRAMMES SCHOLARSHIPS

UP TO 25%

10% *ADDITIONAL SCHOLARSHIP ON THE FIRST YEAR*

- **BEng (Hons) Civil Engineering**
- **BEng (Hons) Mechanical Engineering**
- **BEng (Hons) Architectural Engineering**
- **BEng (Hons) Electrical & Electronic Engineering**

LSBU London South Bank University
EST 1892

ASU جامعة العلوم التطبيقية
APPLIED SCIENCE UNIVERSITY

College of Administrative Sciences

BA (Hons) Business Management

LSBU London South Bank University

ASU جامعة العلوم التطبيقية APPLIED SCIENCE UNIVERSITY

Programme Coordinator:
Dr. Meryem Masmoudi

Office Number:
+973 16036108

Email:
Meryem.masmoudi@asu.edu.bh

Head of Department:
Dr. Khairi Omar

Office Number:
+973 16036188

Email:
khairi.omar@asu.edu.bh

Apply Now | Enquiry | Study Plan

Programme Details

Final Qualification	Language of Study	Mode of Study
BA (Hons) Business Management	English	Full Time

Programme Structure

Study Period	Total Credit Hours	Number of Courses
4 Years	147 Credit Hours	29 modules

Brief about the Programme

Elevate your leadership potential with the BA (Hons) Business Management Dual Award offered by Applied Science University and London South Bank University. This degree develops analytical, communication, and innovation skills while preparing you to thrive in a global business environment.

You will gain foundational and advanced knowledge across administrative disciplines, progressing into specialised business modules that build critical thinking, leadership, and problem-solving capabilities. Graduate with a dual degree recognised locally and internationally and step confidently into management roles across various sectors.

Aims of the Programme

1. Provide a supportive and nurturing learning environment that develops self-confident, independent, and competent business graduates.
2. Develop critical reflection, analytical and problem-solving skills, creativity, and strategic thinking.
3. Guide graduates through a comprehensive exploration of business management disciplines, theories, and real-world issues, while emphasising the application of digital skills in a supportive environment.
4. Equip graduates with a blend of professional and academic skills to enhance their employability, while also offering short and long-term placements, internships, volunteering opportunities, and networking initiatives.
5. Provide platforms for graduates to refine soft skills such as leadership, teamwork, and communication, while nurturing reflective and self-aware business professionals.

The first university in the Kingdom of Bahrain to achieve global accreditation from the British Quality Assurance Agency for Higher Education (QAA)

Rated 5 Stars in the QS Rating System

Ranked 30th in the QS Arab Region University Rankings 2026

Ranked 613 in the QS World University Rankings 2026

Ranked 301+ Worldwide in the Times Higher Education University Impact Rankings

Career Paths

1. Business Analyst
2. Project Manager
3. Human Resources Manager
4. Marketing Specialist
5. Sales Manager
6. Operations Manager
7. Entrepreneur
8. Supply Chain Manager
9. Management Consultant

Entry Requirements

Foundation Level / Year 1:

- A Bahraini or GCC Secondary School Certificate with a minimum of 60% GPA or equivalent*. Candidates with a lower GPA may also be admitted subject to a satisfactory interview by the College.
- IELTS Test Score of 4.5 or equivalent.

Direct Entry to Level 4:

Foundation Year Completion Certificate, or equivalent international qualifications which may typically include:

1. Advanced Level (A-Level) - 3 A-levels – CCC or equivalent in UCAS points
2. International Baccalaureate- IB 28 points
3. CBSE minimum of 65% with 70% in English

- IELTS Test Score of 6.0 or equivalent.

Study Plan

Year	Semester	Module Codes	Credits	Level	Semester	Module Codes	Credits	Level	
Semester 1					Semester 2				
1	ASU_S_IEN	Intermediate English	10	S	ASU_S_POS	Principles of Statistics	10	S	Core
	ASU_S_POM	Principles of Management	20	S	ASU_S_AEN	Advanced English	10	S	Core
	ASU_S_CSK	Computer Skills	10	S	ASU_S_POA	Principles of Accounting	20	S	Core
	ASU_S_MFB	Mathematics for Business	10	S	ASU_S_CSS	Communication and Study skills	10	S	Core
Summer	**ASU_S_CSS**	**Communication and Study Skills**					**10**	**S**	**HEC Req.**
	ASU_S_BCH	**Bahrain Civilisation and History**					**10**	**S**	**HEC Req.**
	ASU_S_BCH	**Arabic Language / Arabic Language for Non-Arabic Speakers**					**0**	**S**	**HEC Req.**
Semester 1					Semester 2				
2	ASU_4_PDP.	Personal Development Planning	20	4	ASU_4_BEC	Business Economics	20	4	Core
	ASU_4_FAF	Financial Accounting Fundamentals	20	4	ASU_4_MIS	Management and Information System	20	4	Core
	ASU_4_PAO	People and Organisations	20	4	ASU_4_POM	Principles of Marketing	20	4	Core
Semester 1					Semester 2				
3	ASU_5_SME	Leading and Managing SMEs	20	5	ASU_5_FOF	Fundamentals of Finance	20	5	Core
	ASU_5_MBI	Managing Business and Innovation	20	5	ASU_5_BEC	Business Ethics Today Social and Legal Foundations	20	5	Core
	ASU_5_MBL	Managing Business Logistics and Negotiations	20	5	ASU_5_FPM	Fundamentals of Project Management	20	5	Core
Semester 1					Semester 2				
4	ASU_6_SML	Strategic Management and Leadership	20	6	ASU_6_IOD	Individual and Organisational Learning and Development	20	6	Core
	ASU_6_MEB	Managing e-business	20	6	ASU_6_DMK	Digital Marketing	20	6	Core
	ASU_6_PPM	Professional Placement Module	20	6	ASU_6_BRM	Business Researc	20	6	Core

Intermediate English

A 10 CAT module which runs for one semester of 15 weeks for three hours per week. It is the first credit English course which undergraduate students are required to take. The course provides intensive practice in Intermediate reading, writing, note-taking and an introduction to oral presentations. Academic and study skills are embedded in the course.

Principles of Management

This module is designed to provide students with the basic knowledge and underpinning theories of management. It describes the functions of an organisation and the functions of management in organisations. It also introduce management issues and problems in business organisations and enable to deal with such issues.

Computer Skills

This module is a mixture of workshop exercises and practical experiments and projects. Students work in small groups of 2-5 people depending on the task. The module also provides students with an introduction to ICT skills in general and in particular as applied to related disciplines.

Mathematics for Business

This course exposes the students to a wide variety of problem descriptions and methods of analysis. It focuses on the field of Business and is the ideal choice if you are interested in developing mathematical skills with a business emphasis. In addition, the course combines the fundamentals of applicable mathematics with the study of business management applications.

Principles of Statistics

This course deals with all aspects of the collection, processing, presentation, and interpretation of measurements or observations, that is, with all of aspects of the handling of data. Thus, data constitutes the raw material we deal with statistics, and its collection is of major concern in any statistical investigation. The topics covered are concepts, tools, techniques and methods of statistics, data managing techniques, descriptive tools, and inferentialstatistics.

Advanced English

A 10 CAT module which runs for one semester of 15 weeks for three hours per week. It is the second credit English course which undergraduate students are required to take. The course provides intensive practice in Advanced level reading, oral presentations, writing, and listening. Academic and study skills are embedded in the course. This course aims to enhance students' English and analytical skills as a prerequisite for academic and professional success.

Principles of Accounting

The module is designed to develop basic knowledge in accounting. It covers the basic accounting concepts and principles to identify, measure, record, andreportbusiness transactions.

Communication and Study Skills

This module provides an introduction to both study and communication skills and practices. The module introduces study skills considering both individual and team-working skills. It covers exam preparation, revision and question answering techniques. It introduces students to their own Personal Development Planning processes. It also enables students to develop and use appropriate working practices as will be expected in a real-life environment.

Bahrain civilization and History

The aim of the module is to highlight the role of the Kingdom of Bahrain in its local, regional and international levels, through various historical eras, beginning with the Old Ages through the Islamic era, to the modern era. The module demonstrates the Arab and Islamic identity of the Kingdom of Bahrain, and the vital role they play politically and culturally.

Human Rights

This course deals with the basic principles of human rights in terms of the definition of human rights and its scope and source, focusing on the provisions of the international law of human rights, which include the following international documents:
a) Charter of the United Nations
b) The Universal Declaration of Human Rights
c) The International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights
d) The International Covenant on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights e- Convention against Torture and Cruel, Inhumane Punishments.
e) Protection Mechanisms and Constitutional Organization of Public Rights and
f) Freedom in the Kingdom of Bahrain

Arabic Language

A 0 CAT module which runs for one semester of 15 weeks for three hours per week. The module provides intensive practice in reading, oral presentations, writing, and note-taking.

Arabic Language for Non-Arabic Speakers

A 0 CAT module which runs for one semester of 15 weeks for three hours per week. The module provides intensive practice for beginners in reading, oral presentations, writing, and note-taking.

Personal Development Planning

This module introduces students to the basic concepts and theories of management in business including the management of others and self. Students will build a virtual tool box of key communication, professional and academic skills essential for success at University and beyond. This module will introduce students to the process of personal development planning supporting them in identifying their goals and achieving their aims via participation in a structured and facilitated coaching process. It will also support students via the development of key IT and academic skills, and acquisition of knowledge necessary for success on an academic business programme or in a professional business setting.

Financial Accounting Fundamentals

This module provides students with the necessary vocabulary and practical skills, techniques and abilities involved in accountancy within the modern business environment and facilitate the development of skills in numeracy, information technology and other associated disciplines.

People and Organisations

The module is designed to give students an appreciation of different types of organizational structure and culture, language and communication and how the role of management can influence performance within organisations. It covers a range of themes including motivation, communication, personality, attitudes and perceptions as well as control and conflict. It emphasizes the complex nature of the relationships between individual and group behaviour and gives students the opportunity to put these theoretical approaches into practice.

Business Economics

This module will introduce a range of essential economic concepts and methods and show how these can be applied to understand the world around us. The emphasis of the module is upon the business applications of economics in facilitating the decisions of managers, entrepreneurs in a variety of situations including pricing, advertising, financing, market entry, and product developments. The module will also consider the implications of the macro economy on the operations of modern firms.

Management and Information Systems

This module introduces students to the subject of managerial levels, department organisation and information systems in a typical organisation. The module provides students with the required skills to critically analyze the impact of information systems (IS) on business organizations.

Principles of Marketing

This module is designed to provide students with the basic principles and concepts of marketing and its necessary tools. Students will also discover how the tools can be used to develop marketing activities. It will also expose students to the factors affecting the market place and to the application of marketingmodels.

Leading and Managing SMEs

This module is designed to equip students with theory and practice in the field from the perspective of individuals within a small and medium sized business. It addresses the issue of leadership styles and its impact upon the performance of SMEs is central to the study of this module.

Managing Business and Innovation

This module is designed to provide students with an insight into the nature, purpose and practice of Innovation and Entrepreneurship within a context of swift and dynamic change in national and global economies. It will also develop the way students interpret information in today's fast-moving

environment, utilize knowledge management and innovative problem solving techniques that are needed within small and large size organisations operating at national and international levels.

Managing Business Logistics and Negotiations

This module demonstrates the importance of logistics and the supply change while also considering procurement and negotiation strategies and techniques within business service, retail and manufacturing environments. You'll gain a clear understanding of the importance and scope of the procurement function and will explore the critical transfer of goods/services across global and local networks, with a critical assessment of ethical elements of supply chain management in view of business logistics. You'll develop a broad understanding of the negotiation process and the development of negotiating strategies for procurement and logistics that is a vital element of moving goods and resources globally and locally.

Fundamentals of Finance

The module is designed to build on the finance and accounting related knowledge and skills acquired by students in their earlier studies. It will provide a sound introduction to modern corporate finance theory and practice and will also prepare the students for further studies in this area at Level 6.

Business Ethics today: Social and Legal Foundations

The module explores a wide range of contemporary ethical issues within a global business framework and aims to investigate and analyse emerging ethical issues in national and international business. In recent times, Business Ethics and issues of Responsible Business have assumed greater importance for managers both nationally and internationally and across private and public sector organisations. Academic scrutiny and public concern have increasingly been directed towards ethical issues of governance, organisational effectiveness and the roles and responsibilities of those who manage organisations, therefore this module will prepare students as future mangers of responsible business.

Fundamentals of Project Management

This module examines the role of project management within the business environment, the project life cycle, and various techniques of project and work planning, control and evaluation to achieve project objectives. The tools currently available to project managers are illustrated in this module through the use of Microsoft® Project software and various other tools that are followed by the PMI and APM BooK (Body of Knowledge).

Strategic Management and Leadership

The module is designed to provide students with a thorough understanding of the theory underpinning strategic management and leadership (it draws upon a wide variety of managerial functions in its creation). Particular emphasis will be given to the process of leadership innovation and the implications of change and its management within organizations.

Managing E-Business

It is often the case that a large investment would have been sustained in the development and

implementation of an e-business presence, and senior managers need to ensure that this investment is achieving its objectives. This module is designed to provide students with knowledge and other key skills to find and resolve problems with business sites, to exploit approaches and features of e-business, to ensure that the systems used are secure for both customers and business using the most appropriate and effective strategies and technologies.

Professional Placement Module

This module is designed to provide authentic learning situations in which students articulate their skills, attributes, knowledge and experience in written form and verbally within a framework of employer requirements. It will enable students to develop a greater understanding of the world of work, through which students will be able to develop their problem-solving, self- analytical, self-reflection, interpersonal and communication skills by drawing on the experience of a workplace setting. It will also enhance students' employability and awareness of career opportunities.

Individual and Organisational Learning and Development

The module is designed to provide students with a thorough understanding of the concept of Individual and Organisational Learning and Development. The module explains the importance of Learning and Development to individuals and organizations, the outline current best practice Learning and Development trends. Particular emphasis will be given to the process of the strategic alignment between the Learning and Development function and the organization Management innovation and the implications of change and its management within organizations.

Digital Marketing

The module is designed to build on the marketing and E-business related knowledge and skills acquired by students in their earlier studies. The aim of the Digital Marketing module is to provide students with the knowledge about business advantages of the digital marketing and its importance for marketing success. Students will explore the development, production and implementation of digital-marketing delivery methods including, but not limited to, email marketing, web-based marketing, search-engine optimization (SEO), online advertising, and social media.

Business Research Methods

This module is designed to introduce students to the research process. It is geared towards guiding students through each of the component parts of the research process including approach and philosophy, design and methodology, sampling, data collection and analysis, quantitative and qualitative research techniques, together with the associated issues of ethics, validity, reliability andgeneralizability.

LSBU London South Bank University
EST 1892

ASU جامعة العلوم التطبيقية
APPLIED SCIENCE UNIVERSITY

College of Law

LLB (Hons) LAW

LSBU London South Bank University

ASU جامعة العلوم التطبيقية APPLIED SCIENCE UNIVERSITY

Programme Coordinator:
Mrs.Ghada Ihsan

Office Number:
+973 16036327

Email:
ghada.ihsan@asu.edu.bh

Head of Department:
Dr. Nasiem Shawawreh

Office Number:
+973 16036125

Email:
Nasiem.Shawawreh@asu.edu.bh

Apply Now | Enquiry | Study Plan

Programme Details

Final Qualification	Language of Study	Mode of Study
LLB Law Degree	English	Full Time

Programme Structure

Study Period	Total Credit Hours	Number of Courses
4 Years	147 Credit Hours	31 Courses

Brief about the Programme

In partnership with London South Bank University (UK), a leading British institution, the Applied Science University (ASU) proudly offers the LLB (Hons) Law Programme.

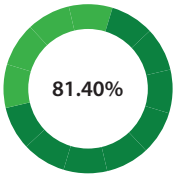
This programme is rapidly emerging as one of the most sought-after disciplines in the Bahraini, regional, and international legal markets. It provides a strong theoretical foundation complemented by practical expertise in key areas of law, including the Bahraini and English legal systems, legal research, and advocacy. Students acquire comprehensive knowledge in core legal subjects, with opportunities to specialize in Business Law or International Law. This combination of theory and practice equips graduates with the skills necessary for successful careers in legal practice, legal research, and a wide range of industries that require legal expertise.

Aims of the Programme

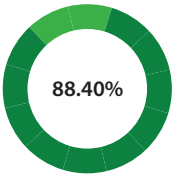
1. Foster graduates' enthusiasm for the legal field, and support the development of intellectual, personal, and practical skills to pursue a successful legal career.
2. Equip graduates with the knowledge and legal and critical skills needed to achieve professional qualification as a Barrister, Legal Executive, or Solicitor in a continually changing employment market.
3. Enhance graduates' legal and critical thinking skills, enabling them to act professionally and ethically at the local, regional, and international levels.
4. Equip graduates with the necessary skills and knowledge to work in a wide range of jobs in the Kingdom of Bahrain, the region, and internationally, particularly those related to the judiciary system and other related fields.
5. Develop graduates' capabilities to pursue further studies and engage in lifelong learning activities.

General Statistics

Student Satisfaction Rate



Advisory Board Satisfaction Rate



The first university in the Kingdom of Bahrain to achieve global accreditation from the British Quality Assurance Agency for Higher Education (QAA)

Rated 5 Stars in the QS Rating System

Ranked 30th in the QS Arab Region University Rankings 2026

Ranked 613 in the QS World University Rankings 2026

Ranked 301+ Worldwide in the Times Higher Education University Impact Rankings

Career Paths

1. Lawyer
2. Judge
3. Legal Consultant
4. Corporate Lawyer
5. Compliance Manager
6. Contract Specialist
7. Legal Researcher
8. Arbitration Specialist
9. Banking & Finance Legal Advisor
10. Human Rights Advocate

Entry Requirements

1. Foundation Level / Year 1:

• A Bahraini or GCC Secondary School Certificate, or equivalent, with a minimum GPA of 60%. Candidates with a lower GPA may also be admitted subject to a satisfactory interview by the College.

* IELTS Test Score of 4.5 or equivalent.

2. Direct Entry to Level 4:

• Foundation Year Completion Certificate, or equivalent international qualifications, which may typically include:

1. A-Level: BCC
2. International Baccalaureate (IB): 29 points
3. CBSE: Minimum 65%, with at least 70% in English

Study Plan

Year	Semester	Module Codes	Credits	Level	Semester	Module Codes	Credits	Level	
Semester 1					Semester 2				
1	ASU_S_IEN	Intermediate	10	S	ASU_S_AEN	Advanced English	10	S	Core
	ASU_S_CSK	Computer Skills	10	S	ASU_S_CSS	Communication and Study Skills	10	S	Core
	ASU_S_IEL	Introduction to English law 1	10	S	ASU_S_FIL	Fundamentals of Islamic Law	10	S	Core
	ASU_S_FPL	Fundamentals of Private Law 1	10	S	ASU_S_ENL	Introduction to English Law 2	10	S	Core
	ASU_S_IPL	Introduction To Public Law	10	S	ASU_S_PRL	Fundamentals of Private Law 2	10	S	Core
Summer	**ASU_S_HUR**	**Human Rights**					**10**	**S**	**HEC req.**
	ASU_S_BCH	**Bahrain Civilisation and History**					**10**	**S**	**HEC req.**
	ASU_S_ALA ASU_S_ALN	**Arabic Language OR Arabic Language for Non-Arabic Speakers**					**10**	**S**	**HEC req.**
Semester 1					Semester 2				
2	ASU_4_ICT	Introduction to Contract & Tort	20	4	ASU_4_LOC	Law of Contract	20	4	Core
	ASU_4_LLL	Legal Skills, Legal Study, Legal System	20	4	ASU_4_LOT	Law of Torts	20	4	Core
	ASU_4_PLA	Public Law	20	4	ASU_4_PEL	Public & EU Law	20	4	Core
Semester 1					Semester 2				
3	ASU_5_CL1	Criminal Law 1	20	5	ASU_5_CL2	Criminal Law 2	20	5	Core
	ASU_5_EUR	EU Rights	20	5	ASU_5_PE1	Property Equity and Trusts 1	20	5	Core
	ASU_5_WIL	Working in Law	20	5	ASU_5_CPL Or ASU_5_CLT	Consumer Protection & the Law OR Comparative Law – Legal Traditions of the World	20	5	Core
Semester 1					Semester 2				
4	ASU_6_PE2	Property Equity and Trusts 2	20	6	ASU_6_LAN	Land Law	20	6	Core
	ASU_6_BLA Or ASU_6_IPH	Business Law OR International Protection of Human Rights	20	6	ASU_6_TLP	The Law Project	20	6	Core
	ASU_6_CLA Or ASU_6_CRL	Company Law OR Criminal Litigation	20	6	ASU_6_EML Or ASU_6_CIL	Employment Law OR Civil Litigation	20	6	Core

Intermediate English

A 10 CAT module which runs for one semester of 15 weeks for three hours per week. It is the first credit English course to be taken by undergraduate students. The course provides intensive practice in intermediate reading, writing, note-taking and an introduction to oral presentations. Academic and study skills are embedded in the course. The course develops students' English language and analytical skills in order to pursue a more advanced academic English course and to cope with the literacy demands of specialized courses taught in English.

Computer Skills

This module is a mixture of workshop exercises and practical experiments and projects. Students work in small groups of 5-2 people depending on the task. The module also provides students with an introduction to ICT skills in general and in particular as applied to related disciplines.

Introduction to English Law 1

This course will provide students with a broad and critical understanding of the structure and function of the English Legal System and will introduce students to two key foundation of the study of law: Criminal Law and Public Law (including Constitutional & Administrative Law and Human Rights).

Fundamentals of Private Law 1

This module provides students to aspects of the Bahraini Legal System and legal skills, with focus on the knowledge of basic provisions of private law (civil law, commercial law), fundaments of both (principles, structure, legal act and its prerequisites, right of ownership, possession, contractual obligations and torts, trader, commercial transactions).

Students will encounter and develop a range of skills, including study skills, deriving law from primary sources and explaining, discussing and applying it, research, using secondary sources, problem solving, essay writing, communication and IT skills, numerical skills, and reflective learning.

Introduction to Public Law

This module covers the definition of public law and its objectives and different themes, such as Constitutional Law, Administrative Law, and Public International Law in the Kingdom of Bahrain, in terms of definitions characteristics, the principles underlying, and sources; and also gives a glimpse of some of the provisions relating to each topic.

Advanced English

A 10 CAT module which runs for one semester of 15 weeks for three hours per week. It is the second credit English course which undergraduate students are required to take. The course provides intensive practice in advanced level reading, oral presentations, writing, and listening. Academic and study skills are embedded in this course. the latter aims to enhance students' English and analytical skills as a prerequisite for academic and professional success.

Module Descriptors

Communication and Study Skills

This module provides an introduction to both study and communication skills and practices. The module introduces study skills considering both individual and team-working skills. It covers exam preparation, revision and question answering techniques. It introduces students to their own Personal Development Planning processes. It also enables students to develop and use appropriate working practices as will be expected in a real-life environment.

Fundamentals of Islamic Law

This course introduces students to the field of Islamic law. It is designed to give students a firm grounding in the principles, concepts and terminology of Islamic law. Students will encounter and develop a range of skills, including study skills, deriving law from primary sources and explaining, discussing and applying it, research, using secondary sources, problem solving, essay writing, communication and IT skills, numerical skills, and reflective learning.

Introduction to English Law 2

This course provides students with a broad and critical understanding of the structure and function of the English legal system and will introduce students to two key foundations of the study of law: Contract Law and Tort Law.

Fundamentals of Private Law 2

This module is designed to provide students with basic and advanced knowledge of branches of private law in the Bahraini legal system, together with legal skills, with focus on the knowledge of basic provisions relating to Civil Law, and Commercial Law (commercial transactions, general rules and precepts for companies in civil Law, types of companies in Bahraini law, commercial bankruptcy).

Students will encounter and develop a range of skills, including study skills, deriving law from primary sources and explaining, discussing and applying it, research, using secondary sources, problem solving, essay writing, communication and IT skills, numerical skills, and reflective learning.

Human Rights

This course deals with the basic principles of human rights in terms of definitions, scope and sources, focusing on the provisions of the international law of human rights, which include the following international documents:

- Charter of the United Nations.
- The Universal Declaration of Human Rights.
- The International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights.
- The International Covenant on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights.
- Convention against Torture and Cruel, Inhumane Punishments.
- Protection Mechanisms and Constitutional Organization of Public Rights and Freedom in the Kingdom of Bahrain.

Module Descriptors

Arabic Language

A 10 CAT module which runs for one semester of 15 weeks with three hours per week. The module provides intensive practice in reading, oral presentations, writing, and note-taking.

Arabic Language for Non-Arabic Speakers

A 10 CAT module which runs for one semester of 15 weeks with three hours per week. The module provides intensive practice for beginners in reading, oral presentations, writing, and note-taking.

Bahrain Civilization and History

The aim of the module is to highlight the role of the Kingdom of Bahrain in its local, regional and international levels, through various historical eras, beginning with the Old Ages through the Islamic era, to the modern era. The module demonstrates the Arab and Islamic identity of the Kingdom of Bahrain, and the vital role they play politically and culturally.

Introduction to Contract & Tort

This module is designed to introduce students to the areas of Tort and Contract Law. Students will be introduced to the basic concepts of contractual and tortious liability. In terms of substantive coverage, Contract Law will focus on formation of contract and Tort will focus on Trespass and Defamation. The module seeks to explore the workings of these areas of law with exploration of the underlying legal, social and economic policies. In addition, this module is also designed to reinforce 3Ls.

Legal Skills /Legal Study/Legal System

This module introduces students to aspects of the English Legal System, and practical, transferable and legal skills and legal theory essential to effective engagement with their legal studies. Students are introduced to the theories of what law is and what are its sources, the court system, EU and International law, and the personnel involved in the administration of the law.

Students will encounter and develop a range of skills, including study skills, deriving law from primary sources and explaining, discussing and applying it, research, using secondary sources, problem solving, essay writing, communication and IT skills, numerical skills, and reflective learning.

Public Law

The purpose of this module is to introduce constitutional and administrative law. Concentration will be upon the values which pervade constitutional practice, sources of which the constitution comprises, an introductory overview of the principles which underpin it and an exploration of the legal manifestations of the Constitution by reference to the articulation between state and individual as expressed through the operation of police powers, the nature and effect of the Human Rights Act and the judicial review.

Module Descriptors

Law of Contract

This module is designed to build on the 'Introduction to Tort and Contract' Module and introduces students to basic concepts of contractual liability arising in the context of contract content, vitiating factors and discharge of a contract. The module seeks to explore the workings of these areas of contract by considering the underlying legal, social and economic policies. In addition, this module is also designed to reinforce 3Ls.

Law of Torts

This module is designed to build on the 'Introduction to Tort and Contract' Module and introduce students to the basic concepts of tortious liability in the context of negligence and torts derived from negligence. The module seeks to explore the workings of these areas of torts with exploration of the underlying legal, social and economic policies. In addition, this module is also designed to reinforce 3Ls.

Public & EU Law

The purpose of this module is to develop further students' understandings of the nature of constitutional arrangements in the UK with a focus on the sovereignty especially in relation to membership of the EU (with the theme connecting the two being the dilemmas thrown up by the dilemmas of sovereignty both internally and externally and the continuing need for governmental supremacy).

Criminal Law 1

Criminal law is one of the core modules required by the professional bodies within a qualifying law degree. The module is designed to introduce students to the basic principles of criminal liability and seeks to explore statutory and common law sources on which the law is based.

EU Rights

The module looks at the impact of EU law on the English Legal System and some of the important and rights granted by EU law. EU law is one of the seven subjects covering the academic stage of legal education "Foundations of Legal Knowledge" leading to the vocational stage for intending practitioners. The module is at level 5. This Module runs across one semester.

Working in the Law

The module provides students with an insight into the procedural and practical application of the law, an opportunity to develop transferable and practical skills in the context of their career development. It will make them think about different kinds of legal work and offer them an opportunity to reflect on their knowledge, develop and practice their skills and gain experience that they will need to acquire in order to pursue the career of their choice. It will assist them in making, reviewing and implementing their career plan. Students will be encouraged and supported in gaining practical work experience in furtherance of the development of their career plan alongside the module.

Criminal Law 2 and the Law of Criminal Evidence

This module is designed to build upon the basic principles of criminal liability that students have studied in 'Criminal Law 1' Module and demonstrates how the rules of evidence apply to the Criminal Law, while considering some more complex areas of the Criminal Law.

Property Equity and Trusts 1

The module introduces students to property law (including Land law), equity and trusts. Students study some basic property law topics, focusing upon the creation, transfer and management of property interests. Key legal, transferable and practical skills are developed. At the same time, the module explores the economic and social basis of property law in business and the family, and the reasons for and policies behind the law. Assessment is by means of a part seen examination. The module also prepares students seeking a qualifying law degree for the further study of Property Equity and Trusts 2 and Land Law.

Consumer Protection & The Law

This module aims:

• To provide students with a thorough grounding in the general principles of consumer protection.
• To enable students to engage in contemporary debate relating to consumer law, its development and reform.
• To enable students to comprehend the integration in practice of previously studied law "subjects".
• To enable students to analyze and evaluate the UK and EU framework for the protection of consumers' interests.
• To appreciate the significance of the social, economic and political context within which the law operates.

The module further examines selected aspects of consumer protection policy and practice to illustrate issues including:

• the implementation of policy goals through the interplay of legal control, voluntary self-regulation and enforcement practice.
• the roles of various national, local and international stakeholders both governmental and non-governmental.
• enforcement policies, protocols and practices.
• alternative models of legislative control e.g. principled and specific and protection strategies e.g. before and after the event. Evolving use of harmonization.
• the complementary deployment of civil (regulatory and compensatory) and criminal law "remedies".
• The role and impact of extra-legal responses.

Comparative Law - Legal Traditions of the World

In this module, students study key concepts of major legal systems in the world - Arabic, Chinese, Civil Law and Common Law. They explore basic underlying philosophies and methods of each legal system and a selection of current topics of debate such as law making & judicial decision making, contract law, crime and punishment, human rights & the relationship between the individual and society, along with medical law. This allows them to analyze and evaluate the similarities and differences of approach between such different legal systems. Students then choose one of these topics for an oral presentation researching, analyzing and evaluating the law and proposals for reform in the light of different approaches between two or more of these major world legal systems.

Property Equity and Trusts 2

This module is designed on the 'Property Equity and Trusts 1' Module, in particular its introduction to Equity and Trusts, to fulfil the study of these topics required by the legal professional bodies as a foundation subject of a qualifying law degree. Students examine the trust and equity in action by considering the powers and duties of trustees, and the control exercised by the courts over them at the behest of beneficiaries (or in the case of charity trustees, the Attorney-General and the Charity Commissioners). Special attention is given to the role of trustees in the management of charities and co-owned land among numerous other examples of the role played by trustees in business life, such as in pension funds, investments, and as personal representatives.

Business Law

This module builds on student learning in Levels 4 and 5, and critically examines key aspects of business law principles. A transactional approach is adopted which emphasizes how contracts are used in a business environment when goods and services are bought and sold. This involves considering the appropriate type of business organization to use, buying or selling through agents, international sale contracts, protecting the transaction through insurance and business failure.

International Protection of Human Rights

In this course, students examine the international protection of human rights in the context of specific countries and themes. Lectures will introduce students to key topics, such as the UN procedures and human rights activism. Students will then research these topics in the context of a specific country (such as Myanmar, Nigeria and Pakistan) and theme (such as Fair Trial, Free Speech and Torture). Seminar discussion will be based on students' research on their selected country and theme. There will be an emphasis on developing effective strategies for combating human rights abuses. Assessment is carried out by a single piece of Coursework.

Company Law

This module is designed to give students an understanding of the development of some of the fundamental principles relating to company law. It examines the nature of a company, company structures, management and ownership, capital structures and shareholder remedies. The course takes into account the impact of the EU legal framework and current company law reform proposals.

Criminal Litigation

The module examines key areas in the criminal litigation process, from arrest and charge, to trial, appeal and sentencing, including:

- the roles of key personnel and organizations in the criminal justice system.
- the funding of criminal matters by the Legal Services Commission/Criminal Defense Service.
- human rights issues.
- the rules of client care & professional conduct in criminal cases.
- an introduction to criminal evidence.
- the law and practice of criminal advocacy.
- the special considerations that apply to young offenders under the age of 18.

Land Law

This module is designed to build on the students' knowledge and understanding of Property Law and Equity & Trusts. The module covers the principles of English Land Law, sources, development, application and reforms.

The Law Project

(International Business Law OR Comparative Law topic)

The project gives students an opportunity to carry out an extended and independent research in an area of their choice relating to substantive English law. Normally, a student will not be allowed to choose a topic that has been taught in detail on the degree. There are three pieces of assessed work, which count towards the final project mark. A project supervisor is allocated to each student once the student has selected a project area.

Employment Law

This module critically examines the law directly governing the employment relationship including both the contract of employment and statutory regulations. It is concerned primarily with key issues and basic principles, and the application of the law in the workplace. Employment law is a complex and expanding area of study constantly changing. In addition to original legal materials such as statutes and cases, seminar readings are drawn from academic literature, official documents and case studies.

Civil Litigation

The module examines key areas in the civil litigation process, from pre-action steps and issue of claim to trial and appeal, including:

- the ethos of modern civil litigation.
- human rights issues.
- civil litigation funding.
- the central role of the civil procedure rules.
- rules of professional conduct in civil litigation cases.
- case management by the courts.
- offers to settle.
- alternative dispute resolution.
- civil evidence and civil advocacy.
- orders, judgments and their enforcement.
- the ethos of modern civil litigation.
- human rights issues.
- civil litigation funding.
- the central role of the civil procedure rules.
- rules of professional conduct in civil litigation cases.
- case management by the courts.
- offers to settle.
- alternative dispute resolution.
- civil evidence and civil advocacy.
- orders, judgments and their enforcement.

LSBU London South Bank University
EST 1892

ASU جامعة العلوم التطبيقية APPLIED SCIENCE UNIVERSITY

SECURE UP TO

35% SCHOLARSHIP

FOR YOUR ENTIRE EDUCATION JOURNEY

College of Administrative Sciences

BA (Hons) Business Management

College of Law

LLB (Hons) Law

الجامعة الأعلى تصنيفاً في مملكة البحرين بحسب تصنيفات كيو إس العالمية لعام 2026

THE HIGHEST RANKED UNIVERSITY IN THE KINGDOM OF BAHRAIN ACCORDING TO QS RANKINGS FOR THE YEAR 2026

جامعة العلوم التطبيقية على طريق التميز

THE LEADING UNIVERSITY

THAT BRIDGES THEORY WITH PRACTICE

QS WORLD UNIVERSITY RANKINGS

RANKED 613
in the QS World University Rankings 2026

QS STARS™ RATING SYSTEM

RATED 5 STARS
in the QS World University Ratings

QS UNIVERSITY RANKINGS ARAB REGION

RANKED 30
in the QS Arab Region University Rankings 2026

Times Higher Education Impact Rankings

Ranked 301-400th in the Times Higher Education (THE) Impact Rankings 2025

BRITISH COUNCIL IELTS™

Accredited by British Council as an IELTS Registration Centre

AdvanceHE

Accredited Center by the Advance HE, United Kingdom with recognized faculty members as fellows & senior fellows of the HEA.

QAA UK Quality Assured

Accredited by the Quality Assurance Agency for Higher Education, QAA UK

Project Management Institute.

Accredited by the Project Management Institute (PMI) US to become the first Authorized Training Partner (ATP) in Bahrain

CONTACT US

ASU_bh

facebook
ASUBAHRAINOFFICIAL

YouTube
ASU Bahrain

EMAIL:
Info@asu.edu.bh

WEBSITE:
www.asu.edu.bh

WHATSAPP:
+97366633770

TEL:
+97317728777
+97316018866
+97316018888

ADDRESS:
Building 166, Road 23,
Block 623 East Al-Ekir,
P.O. Box 5055
Kingdom of Bahrain